

MEMBERS' HANDBOOK

Update No. 218

(Issued 28 June 2018)

This update relates to the issuance of a revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

<u>Document Reference and Title</u>	<u>Instructions</u>	<u>Explanations</u>
<u>VOLUME II</u>		
<u>Contents of Volume II</u>	Discard existing page i & replace with revised page i.	Revised contents page
PREFACE AND FRAMEWORK		
<u>Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2018</u>	Insert these pages after <i>Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010</i>	Refer to Notes

Notes:

- The revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* ('revised Framework') supersedes the version that was issued in 2010 and is the equivalent of the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.
- The revised Framework assists:
 - the HKICPA to develop Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (Standards) and Accounting Guidelines that are based on consistent concepts;
 - preparers of financial reports to develop consistent accounting policies when no Standard or Accounting Guideline applies to a particular transaction or other event, or when a Standard or an Accounting Guideline allows a choice of accounting policies; and
 - all parties to understand and interpret Standards and Accounting Guidelines.
- The revised Framework is not a Standard nor an Accounting Guideline. It does not override any Standard, any requirement in a Standard or Accounting Guideline.
- The revised Framework includes:
 - new chapters on measurement and reporting financial performance;
 - new guidance on derecognition of assets and liabilities;
 - updated definitions of asset and liability; and
 - clarifications in the roles of stewardship, prudence and measurement uncertainty in financial reporting.
- The HKICPA will start using the revised Framework immediately when revising or developing Standards or Accounting Guidelines. However, changes to the revised Framework will have no immediate effect on the financial statements of most reporting entities. Preparers of financial statements could be directly affected by the changes only if they need to use the

revised Framework to develop an accounting policy when no Standard or Accounting Guideline applies to a particular transaction or other event, or when a Standard or an Accounting Guideline allows a choice of accounting policy. Preparers will apply the revised Framework from the annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020.



MEMBERS' HANDBOOK CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

(Updated to June 2018)

		<i>Issue/(Review date)</i>
PREFACE AND FRAMEWORK		
PREFACE	Preface to Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards	10/06(4/15)
CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK	Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010	10/10
CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK (Revised)	Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2018	6/18
HONG KONG ACCOUNTING STANDARDS (HKAS)		
HKAS 1 Revised	Presentation of Financial Statements	12/07(8/17)
HKAS 2	Inventories	3/04(2/14)
HKAS 7	Statement of Cash Flows	12/04(8/17)
HKAS 8	Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors	9/04(2/14)
HKAS 10	Events after the Reporting Period	3/04(2/14)
HKAS 11	Construction Contracts	12/04(3/10)
HKAS 12	Income Taxes	11/04(8/17)
HKAS 16	Property, Plant and Equipment	11/05(1/17)
HKAS 17	Leases	12/04(1/17)
HKAS 18	Revenue	11/04(5/14)
HKAS 19 (2011)	Employee Benefits	7/11(4/18)
HKAS 20	Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance	12/04(2/14)
HKAS 21	The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates	3/04(5/14)
HKAS 23 Revised	Borrowing Cost	6/07(1/17)
HKAS 24 Revised	Related Party Disclosures	11/09 (11/16)
HKAS 26	Accounting and Reporting by Retirement Benefit Plans	8/04
HKAS 27 (2011)	Separate Financial Statements	6/11(1/17)
HKAS 28 (2011)	Investments in Associates and Joint Ventures	6/11(1/18)

Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2018



Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

COPYRIGHT

© Copyright 2018 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Framework contains the IFRS Foundation copyright material. Reproduction within Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Hong Kong should be addressed to the Director, Finance and Operations, Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

All rights in this material outside of Hong Kong are reserved by IFRS Foundation. Reproduction of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards outside of Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only. Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce for commercial purposes outside Hong Kong should be addressed to the IFRS Foundation at www.ifrs.org.

Further details of the IFRS Foundation copyright notice is available at <http://app1.hkicpa.org.hk/ebook/copyright-notice.pdf>

CONTENTS

from paragraph

STATUS AND PURPOSE OF THE <i>CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK</i>	SP1.1
CHAPTER 1—THE OBJECTIVE OF GENERAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL REPORTING	
INTRODUCTION	1.1
OBJECTIVE, USEFULNESS AND LIMITATIONS OF GENERAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL REPORTING	1.2
INFORMATION ABOUT A REPORTING ENTITY'S ECONOMIC RESOURCES, CLAIMS AGAINST THE ENTITY AND CHANGES IN RESOURCES AND CLAIMS	1.12
Economic resources and claims	1.13
Changes in economic resources and claims	1.15
Financial performance reflected by accrual accounting	1.17
Financial performance reflected by past cash flows	1.20
Changes in economic resources and claims not resulting from financial performance	1.21
INFORMATION ABOUT USE OF THE ENTITY'S ECONOMIC RESOURCES	1.22
CHAPTER 2—QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION	
INTRODUCTION	2.1
QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION	2.4
Fundamental qualitative characteristics	2.5
Enhancing qualitative characteristics	2.23
THE COST CONSTRAINT ON USEFUL FINANCIAL REPORTING	2.39
CHAPTER 3—FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND THE REPORTING ENTITY	
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	3.1
Objective and scope of financial statements	3.2
Reporting period	3.4
Perspective adopted in financial statements	3.8
Going concern assumption	3.9
THE REPORTING ENTITY	3.10
Consolidated and unconsolidated financial statements	3.15
CHAPTER 4—THE ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	
INTRODUCTION	4.1
DEFINITION OF AN ASSET	4.3
Right	4.6
Potential to produce economic benefits	4.14
Control	4.19

DEFINITION OF A LIABILITY	4.26
Obligation	4.28
Transfer of an economic resource	4.36
Present obligation as a result of past events	4.42
ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	4.48
Unit of account	4.48
Executory contracts	4.56
Substance of contractual rights and contractual obligations	4.59
DEFINITION OF EQUITY	4.63
DEFINITIONS OF INCOME AND EXPENSES	4.68
CHAPTER 5—RECOGNITION AND DERECOGNITION	
THE RECOGNITION PROCESS	5.1
RECOGNITION CRITERIA	5.6
Relevance	5.12
Faithful representation	5.18
DERECOGNITION	5.26
CHAPTER 6—MEASUREMENT	
INTRODUCTION	6.1
MEASUREMENT BASES	6.4
Historical cost	6.4
Current value	6.10
INFORMATION PROVIDED BY PARTICULAR MEASUREMENT BASES	6.23
Historical cost	6.24
Current value	6.32
FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN SELECTING A MEASUREMENT BASIS	6.43
Relevance	6.49
Faithful representation	6.58
Enhancing qualitative characteristics and the cost constraint	6.63
Factors specific to initial measurement	6.77
More than one measurement basis	6.83
MEASUREMENT OF EQUITY	6.87
CASH-FLOW-BASED MEASUREMENT TECHNIQUES	6.91
CHAPTER 7—PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE	
PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE AS COMMUNICATION TOOLS	7.1
PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE OBJECTIVES AND PRINCIPLES	7.4
CLASSIFICATION	7.7
Classification of assets and liabilities	7.9
Classification of equity	7.12
Classification of income and expenses	7.14

AGGREGATION	7.20
CHAPTER 8—CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL AND CAPITAL MAINTENANCE	
CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL	8.1
CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL MAINTENANCE AND THE DETERMINATION OF PROFIT	8.3
CAPITAL MAINTENANCE ADJUSTMENTS	8.10
APPENDIX 1—DEFINED TERMS	
APPENDIX 2—COMPARISON OF THE HONG KONG CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK WITH THE IASB CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK	
BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS [see separate booklet]	
AMENDMENTS TO REFERENCES TO THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK IN HKFRS STANDARDS [see separate booklet]	
AMENDMENTS TO REFERENCES TO THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK IN HKFRS STANDARDS (BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS) [see separate booklet]	
AMENDMENTS TO REFERENCES TO THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK IN HKFRS STANDARDS (ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES AND IMPLEMENTATION GUIDANCE) [see separate booklet]	

STATUS AND PURPOSE OF THE *CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK*

- SP1.1 The *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework)* describes the objective of, and the concepts for, general purpose financial reporting. The purpose of the *Conceptual Framework* is to:
- (a) assist the HKICPA to develop Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (Standards) and Accounting Guidelines that are based on consistent concepts;
 - (b) assist preparers to develop consistent accounting policies when no Standard or Accounting Guideline applies to a particular transaction or other event, or when a Standard or an Accounting Guideline allows a choice of accounting policy; and
 - (c) assist all parties to understand and interpret the Standards and Accounting Guidelines.
- SP1.2 The *Conceptual Framework* is not a Standard nor an Accounting Guideline. Nothing in the *Conceptual Framework* overrides any Standard, any requirement in a Standard or Accounting Guideline.
- SP1.3 To meet the objective of general purpose financial reporting, the HKICPA may sometimes specify requirements that depart from aspects of the *Conceptual Framework*. If the HKICPA does so, it will explain the departure in the Basis for Conclusions on that Standard.
- SP1.4 The *Conceptual Framework* may be revised from time to time on the basis of the HKICPA's experience of working with it. Revisions of the *Conceptual Framework* will not automatically lead to changes to the Standards and Accounting Guidelines. Any decision to amend a Standard or an Accounting Guideline would require the HKICPA to go through its due process for adding a project to its agenda and developing an amendment to that Standard or Accounting Guideline.
- SP1.5 The *Conceptual Framework* provides the foundation for Standards and Accounting Guidelines that:
- (a) contribute to transparency by enhancing the comparability and quality of financial information, enabling investors and other market participants to make informed economic decisions.
 - (b) strengthen accountability by reducing the information gap between the providers of capital and the people to whom they have entrusted their money. Standards and Accounting Guidelines based on the *Conceptual Framework* provide information needed to hold management to account. As a source of comparable information, those Standards and Accounting Guidelines are also of vital importance to regulators.
 - (c) contribute to economic efficiency by helping investors to identify opportunities and risks, thus improving capital allocation. For businesses, the use of a single, trusted accounting language derived from Standards and Accounting Guidelines based on the *Conceptual Framework* lowers the cost of capital and reduces reporting costs.

from paragraph

**CHAPTER 1—THE OBJECTIVE OF GENERAL PURPOSE
FINANCIAL REPORTING**

INTRODUCTION	1.1
OBJECTIVE, USEFULNESS AND LIMITATIONS OF GENERAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL REPORTING	1.2
INFORMATION ABOUT A REPORTING ENTITY'S ECONOMIC RESOURCES, CLAIMS AGAINST THE ENTITY AND CHANGES IN RESOURCES AND CLAIMS	1.12
Economic resources and claims	1.13
Changes in economic resources and claims	1.15
Financial performance reflected by accrual accounting	1.17
Financial performance reflected by past cash flows	1.20
Changes in economic resources and claims not resulting from financial performance	1.21
INFORMATION ABOUT USE OF THE ENTITY'S ECONOMIC RESOURCES	1.22

Introduction

- 1.1 The objective of general purpose financial reporting forms the foundation of the *Conceptual Framework*. Other aspects of the *Conceptual Framework*—the qualitative characteristics of, and the cost constraint on, useful financial information, a reporting entity concept, elements of financial statements, recognition and derecognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure—flow logically from the objective.

Objective, usefulness and limitations of general purpose financial reporting

- 1.2 The objective of general purpose financial reporting¹ is to provide financial information about the reporting entity that is useful to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors in making decisions relating to providing resources to the entity.² Those decisions involve decisions about:
- (a) buying, selling or holding equity and debt instruments;
 - (b) providing or settling loans and other forms of credit; or
 - (c) exercising rights to vote on, or otherwise influence, management's actions that affect the use of the entity's economic resources.
- 1.3 The decisions described in paragraph 1.2 depend on the returns that existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors expect, for example, dividends, principal and interest payments or market price increases. Investors', lenders' and other creditors' expectations about returns depend on their assessment of the amount, timing and uncertainty of (the prospects for) future net cash inflows to the entity and on their assessment of management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources. Existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors need information to help them make those assessments.
- 1.4 To make the assessments described in paragraph 1.3, existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors need information about:
- (a) the economic resources of the entity, claims against the entity and changes in those resources and claims (see paragraphs 1.12–1.21); and
 - (b) how efficiently and effectively the entity's management and governing board³ have discharged their responsibilities to use the entity's economic resources (see paragraphs 1.22–1.23).
- 1.5 Many existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors cannot require reporting entities to provide information directly to them and must rely on general purpose financial reports for much of the financial information they need. Consequently, they are the primary users to whom general purpose financial reports are directed.⁴
- 1.6 However, general purpose financial reports do not and cannot provide all of the information that existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors need. Those users need to consider pertinent information from other sources, for example, general economic conditions and expectations, political events and political climate, and industry and company outlooks.

1 Throughout the *Conceptual Framework*, the terms 'financial reports' and 'financial reporting' refer to general purpose financial reports and general purpose financial reporting unless specifically indicated otherwise.

2 Throughout the *Conceptual Framework*, the term 'entity' refers to the reporting entity unless specifically indicated otherwise.

3 Throughout the *Conceptual Framework*, the term 'management' refers to management and the governing board of an entity unless specifically indicated otherwise.

4 Throughout the *Conceptual Framework*, the terms 'primary users' and 'users' refer to those existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors who must rely on general purpose financial reports for much of the financial information they need.

- 1.7 General purpose financial reports are not designed to show the value of a reporting entity; but they provide information to help existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors to estimate the value of the reporting entity.
- 1.8 Individual primary users have different, and possibly conflicting, information needs and desires. The HKICPA, in developing Standards and Accounting Guidelines, will seek to provide the information set that will meet the needs of the maximum number of primary users. However, focusing on common information needs does not prevent the reporting entity from including additional information that is most useful to a particular subset of primary users.
- 1.9 The management of a reporting entity is also interested in financial information about the entity. However, management need not rely on general purpose financial reports because it is able to obtain the financial information it needs internally.
- 1.10 Other parties, such as regulators and members of the public other than investors, lenders and other creditors, may also find general purpose financial reports useful. However, those reports are not primarily directed to these other groups.
- 1.11 To a large extent, financial reports are based on estimates, judgements and models rather than exact depictions. The *Conceptual Framework* establishes the concepts that underlie those estimates, judgements and models. The concepts are the goal towards which the HKICPA and preparers of financial reports strive. As with most goals, the *Conceptual Framework's* vision of ideal financial reporting is unlikely to be achieved in full, at least not in the short term, because it takes time to understand, accept and implement new ways of analysing transactions and other events. Nevertheless, establishing a goal towards which to strive is essential if financial reporting is to evolve so as to improve its usefulness.

Information about a reporting entity's economic resources, claims against the entity and changes in resources and claims

- 1.12 General purpose financial reports provide information about the financial position of a reporting entity, which is information about the entity's economic resources and the claims against the reporting entity. Financial reports also provide information about the effects of transactions and other events that change a reporting entity's economic resources and claims. Both types of information provide useful input for decisions relating to providing resources to an entity.

Economic resources and claims

- 1.13 Information about the nature and amounts of a reporting entity's economic resources and claims can help users to identify the reporting entity's financial strengths and weaknesses. That information can help users to assess the reporting entity's liquidity and solvency, its needs for additional financing and how successful it is likely to be in obtaining that financing. That information can also help users to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources. Information about priorities and payment requirements of existing claims helps users to predict how future cash flows will be distributed among those with a claim against the reporting entity.
- 1.14 Different types of economic resources affect a user's assessment of the reporting entity's prospects for future cash flows differently. Some future cash flows result directly from existing economic resources, such as accounts receivable. Other cash flows result from using several resources in combination to produce and market goods or services to customers. Although those cash flows cannot be identified with individual economic resources (or claims), users of financial reports need to know the nature and amount of the resources available for use in a reporting entity's operations.

Changes in economic resources and claims

- 1.15 Changes in a reporting entity's economic resources and claims result from that entity's financial performance (see paragraphs 1.17–1.20) and from other events or transactions such as issuing debt or equity instruments (see paragraph 1.21). To properly assess both the prospects for future net cash inflows to the reporting entity and management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources, users need to be able to identify those two types of changes.
- 1.16 Information about a reporting entity's financial performance helps users to understand the return that the entity has produced on its economic resources. Information about the return the entity has produced can help users to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources. Information about the variability and components of that return is also important, especially in assessing the uncertainty of future cash flows. Information about a reporting entity's past financial performance and how its management discharged its stewardship responsibilities is usually helpful in predicting the entity's future returns on its economic resources.

Financial performance reflected by accrual accounting

- 1.17 Accrual accounting depicts the effects of transactions and other events and circumstances on a reporting entity's economic resources and claims in the periods in which those effects occur, even if the resulting cash receipts and payments occur in a different period. This is important because information about a reporting entity's economic resources and claims and changes in its economic resources and claims during a period provides a better basis for assessing the entity's past and future performance than information solely about cash receipts and payments during that period.
- 1.18 Information about a reporting entity's financial performance during a period, reflected by changes in its economic resources and claims other than by obtaining additional resources directly from investors and creditors (see paragraph 1.21), is useful in assessing the entity's past and future ability to generate net cash inflows. That information indicates the extent to which the reporting entity has increased its available economic resources, and thus its capacity for generating net cash inflows through its operations rather than by obtaining additional resources directly from investors and creditors. Information about a reporting entity's financial performance during a period can also help users to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources.
- 1.19 Information about a reporting entity's financial performance during a period may also indicate the extent to which events such as changes in market prices or interest rates have increased or decreased the entity's economic resources and claims, thereby affecting the entity's ability to generate net cash inflows.

Financial performance reflected by past cash flows

- 1.20 Information about a reporting entity's cash flows during a period also helps users to assess the entity's ability to generate future net cash inflows and to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources. That information indicates how the reporting entity obtains and spends cash, including information about its borrowing and repayment of debt, cash dividends or other cash distributions to investors, and other factors that may affect the entity's liquidity or solvency. Information about cash flows helps users understand a reporting entity's operations, evaluate its financing and investing activities, assess its liquidity or solvency and interpret other information about financial performance.

Changes in economic resources and claims not resulting from financial performance

- 1.21 A reporting entity's economic resources and claims may also change for reasons other than financial performance, such as issuing debt or equity instruments. Information about this type of change is necessary to give users a complete understanding of why the reporting entity's economic resources and claims changed and the implications of those changes for its future financial performance.

Information about use of the entity's economic resources

- 1.22 Information about how efficiently and effectively the reporting entity's management has discharged its responsibilities to use the entity's economic resources helps users to assess management's stewardship of those resources. Such information is also useful for predicting how efficiently and effectively management will use the entity's economic resources in future periods. Hence, it can be useful for assessing the entity's prospects for future net cash inflows.
- 1.23 Examples of management's responsibilities to use the entity's economic resources include protecting those resources from unfavourable effects of economic factors, such as price and technological changes, and ensuring that the entity complies with applicable laws, regulations and contractual provisions.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 2—QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

INTRODUCTION	2.1
QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION	2.4
Fundamental qualitative characteristics	2.5
Relevance	2.6
<i>Materiality</i>	2.11
Faithful representation	2.12
Applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics	2.20
Enhancing qualitative characteristics	2.23
Comparability	2.24
Verifiability	2.30
Timeliness	2.33
Understandability	2.34
Applying the enhancing qualitative characteristics	2.37
THE COST CONSTRAINT ON USEFUL FINANCIAL REPORTING	2.39

Introduction

- 2.1 The qualitative characteristics of useful financial information discussed in this chapter identify the types of information that are likely to be most useful to the existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors for making decisions about the reporting entity on the basis of information in its financial report (financial information).
- 2.2 Financial reports provide information about the reporting entity's economic resources, claims against the reporting entity and the effects of transactions and other events and conditions that change those resources and claims. (This information is referred to in the *Conceptual Framework* as information about the economic phenomena.) Some financial reports also include explanatory material about management's expectations and strategies for the reporting entity, and other types of forward-looking information.
- 2.3 The qualitative characteristics of useful financial information⁵ apply to financial information provided in financial statements, as well as to financial information provided in other ways. Cost, which is a pervasive constraint on the reporting entity's ability to provide useful financial information, applies similarly. However, the considerations in applying the qualitative characteristics and the cost constraint may be different for different types of information. For example, applying them to forward-looking information may be different from applying them to information about existing economic resources and claims and to changes in those resources and claims.

Qualitative characteristics of useful financial information

- 2.4 If financial information is to be useful, it must be relevant and faithfully represent what it purports to represent. The usefulness of financial information is enhanced if it is comparable, verifiable, timely and understandable.

Fundamental qualitative characteristics

- 2.5 The fundamental qualitative characteristics are relevance and faithful representation.

Relevance

- 2.6 Relevant financial information is capable of making a difference in the decisions made by users. Information may be capable of making a difference in a decision even if some users choose not to take advantage of it or are already aware of it from other sources.
- 2.7 Financial information is capable of making a difference in decisions if it has predictive value, confirmatory value or both.
- 2.8 Financial information has predictive value if it can be used as an input to processes employed by users to predict future outcomes. Financial information need not be a prediction or forecast to have predictive value. Financial information with predictive value is employed by users in making their own predictions.
- 2.9 Financial information has confirmatory value if it provides feedback about (confirms or changes) previous evaluations.

5 Throughout the *Conceptual Framework*, the terms 'qualitative characteristics' and 'cost constraint' refer to the qualitative characteristics of, and the cost constraint on, useful financial information.

- 2.10 The predictive value and confirmatory value of financial information are interrelated. Information that has predictive value often also has confirmatory value. For example, revenue information for the current year, which can be used as the basis for predicting revenues in future years, can also be compared with revenue predictions for the current year that were made in past years. The results of those comparisons can help a user to correct and improve the processes that were used to make those previous predictions.

Materiality

- 2.11 Information is material if omitting it or misstating it could influence decisions that the primary users of general purpose financial reports (see paragraph 1.5) make on the basis of those reports, which provide financial information about a specific reporting entity. In other words, materiality is an entity-specific aspect of relevance based on the nature or magnitude, or both, of the items to which the information relates in the context of an individual entity's financial report. Consequently, the HKICPA cannot specify a uniform quantitative threshold for materiality or predetermine what could be material in a particular situation.

Faithful representation

- 2.12 Financial reports represent economic phenomena in words and numbers. To be useful, financial information must not only represent relevant phenomena, but it must also faithfully represent the substance of the phenomena that it purports to represent. In many circumstances, the substance of an economic phenomenon and its legal form are the same. If they are not the same, providing information only about the legal form would not faithfully represent the economic phenomenon (see paragraphs 4.59–4.62).
- 2.13 To be a perfectly faithful representation, a depiction would have three characteristics. It would be complete, neutral and free from error. Of course, perfection is seldom, if ever, achievable. The HKICPA's objective is to maximise those qualities to the extent possible.
- 2.14 A complete depiction includes all information necessary for a user to understand the phenomenon being depicted, including all necessary descriptions and explanations. For example, a complete depiction of a group of assets would include, at a minimum, a description of the nature of the assets in the group, a numerical depiction of all of the assets in the group, and a description of what the numerical depiction represents (for example, historical cost or fair value). For some items, a complete depiction may also entail explanations of significant facts about the quality and nature of the items, factors and circumstances that might affect their quality and nature, and the process used to determine the numerical depiction.
- 2.15 A neutral depiction is without bias in the selection or presentation of financial information. A neutral depiction is not slanted, weighted, emphasised, de-emphasised or otherwise manipulated to increase the probability that financial information will be received favourably or unfavourably by users. Neutral information does not mean information with no purpose or no influence on behaviour. On the contrary, relevant financial information is, by definition, capable of making a difference in users' decisions.
- 2.16 Neutrality is supported by the exercise of prudence. Prudence is the exercise of caution when making judgements under conditions of uncertainty. The exercise of prudence means that assets and income are not overstated and liabilities and expenses are not understated.⁶ Equally, the exercise of prudence does not allow for the understatement of assets or income or the overstatement of liabilities or expenses. Such misstatements can lead to the overstatement or understatement of income or expenses in future periods.

6 Assets, liabilities, income and expenses are defined in Table 4.1. They are the elements of financial statements.

- 2.17 The exercise of prudence does not imply a need for asymmetry, for example, a systematic need for more persuasive evidence to support the recognition of assets or income than the recognition of liabilities or expenses. Such asymmetry is not a qualitative characteristic of useful financial information. Nevertheless, particular Standards may contain asymmetric requirements if this is a consequence of decisions intended to select the most relevant information that faithfully represents what it purports to represent.
- 2.18 Faithful representation does not mean accurate in all respects. Free from error means there are no errors or omissions in the description of the phenomenon, and the process used to produce the reported information has been selected and applied with no errors in the process. In this context, free from error does not mean perfectly accurate in all respects. For example, an estimate of an unobservable price or value cannot be determined to be accurate or inaccurate. However, a representation of that estimate can be faithful if the amount is described clearly and accurately as being an estimate, the nature and limitations of the estimating process are explained, and no errors have been made in selecting and applying an appropriate process for developing the estimate.
- 2.19 When monetary amounts in financial reports cannot be observed directly and must instead be estimated, measurement uncertainty arises. The use of reasonable estimates is an essential part of the preparation of financial information and does not undermine the usefulness of the information if the estimates are clearly and accurately described and explained. Even a high level of measurement uncertainty does not necessarily prevent such an estimate from providing useful information (see paragraph 2.22).

Applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics

- 2.20 Information must both be relevant and provide a faithful representation of what it purports to represent if it is to be useful. Neither a faithful representation of an irrelevant phenomenon nor an unfaithful representation of a relevant phenomenon helps users make good decisions.
- 2.21 The most efficient and effective process for applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics would usually be as follows (subject to the effects of enhancing characteristics and the cost constraint, which are not considered in this example). First, identify an economic phenomenon, information about which is capable of being useful to users of the reporting entity's financial information. Second, identify the type of information about that phenomenon that would be most relevant. Third, determine whether that information is available and whether it can provide a faithful representation of the economic phenomenon. If so, the process of satisfying the fundamental qualitative characteristics ends at that point. If not, the process is repeated with the next most relevant type of information.
- 2.22 In some cases, a trade-off between the fundamental qualitative characteristics may need to be made in order to meet the objective of financial reporting, which is to provide useful information about economic phenomena. For example, the most relevant information about a phenomenon may be a highly uncertain estimate. In some cases, the level of measurement uncertainty involved in making that estimate may be so high that it may be questionable whether the estimate would provide a sufficiently faithful representation of that phenomenon. In some such cases, the most useful information may be the highly uncertain estimate, accompanied by a description of the estimate and an explanation of the uncertainties that affect it. In other such cases, if that information would not provide a sufficiently faithful representation of that phenomenon, the most useful information may include an estimate of another type that is slightly less relevant but is subject to lower measurement uncertainty. In limited circumstances, there may be no estimate that provides useful information. In those limited circumstances, it may be necessary to provide information that does not rely on an estimate.

Enhancing qualitative characteristics

- 2.23 Comparability, verifiability, timeliness and understandability are qualitative characteristics that enhance the usefulness of information that both is relevant and provides a faithful representation of what it purports to represent. The enhancing qualitative characteristics may also help determine which of two ways should be used to depict a phenomenon if both are considered to provide equally relevant information and an equally faithful representation of that phenomenon.

Comparability

- 2.24 Users' decisions involve choosing between alternatives, for example, selling or holding an investment, or investing in one reporting entity or another. Consequently, information about a reporting entity is more useful if it can be compared with similar information about other entities and with similar information about the same entity for another period or another date.
- 2.25 Comparability is the qualitative characteristic that enables users to identify and understand similarities in, and differences among, items. Unlike the other qualitative characteristics, comparability does not relate to a single item. A comparison requires at least two items.
- 2.26 Consistency, although related to comparability, is not the same. Consistency refers to the use of the same methods for the same items, either from period to period within a reporting entity or in a single period across entities. Comparability is the goal; consistency helps to achieve that goal.
- 2.27 Comparability is not uniformity. For information to be comparable, like things must look alike and different things must look different. Comparability of financial information is not enhanced by making unlike things look alike any more than it is enhanced by making like things look different.
- 2.28 Some degree of comparability is likely to be attained by satisfying the fundamental qualitative characteristics. A faithful representation of a relevant economic phenomenon should naturally possess some degree of comparability with a faithful representation of a similar relevant economic phenomenon by another reporting entity.
- 2.29 Although a single economic phenomenon can be faithfully represented in multiple ways, permitting alternative accounting methods for the same economic phenomenon diminishes comparability.

Verifiability

- 2.30 Verifiability helps assure users that information faithfully represents the economic phenomena it purports to represent. Verifiability means that different knowledgeable and independent observers could reach consensus, although not necessarily complete agreement, that a particular depiction is a faithful representation. Quantified information need not be a single point estimate to be verifiable. A range of possible amounts and the related probabilities can also be verified.
- 2.31 Verification can be direct or indirect. Direct verification means verifying an amount or other representation through direct observation, for example, by counting cash. Indirect verification means checking the inputs to a model, formula or other technique and recalculating the outputs using the same methodology. An example is verifying the carrying amount of inventory by checking the inputs (quantities and costs) and recalculating the ending inventory using the same cost flow assumption (for example, using the first-in, first-out method).
- 2.32 It may not be possible to verify some explanations and forward-looking financial information until a future period, if at all. To help users decide whether they want to use that information, it would normally be necessary to disclose the underlying assumptions, the methods of compiling the information and other factors and circumstances that support the information.

Timeliness

- 2.33 Timeliness means having information available to decision-makers in time to be capable of influencing their decisions. Generally, the older the information is the less useful it is. However, some information may continue to be timely long after the end of a reporting period because, for example, some users may need to identify and assess trends.

Understandability

- 2.34 Classifying, characterising and presenting information clearly and concisely makes it understandable.
- 2.35 Some phenomena are inherently complex and cannot be made easy to understand. Excluding information about those phenomena from financial reports might make the information in those financial reports easier to understand. However, those reports would be incomplete and therefore possibly misleading.
- 2.36 Financial reports are prepared for users who have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and who review and analyse the information diligently. At times, even well-informed and diligent users may need to seek the aid of an adviser to understand information about complex economic phenomena.

Applying the enhancing qualitative characteristics

- 2.37 Enhancing qualitative characteristics should be maximised to the extent possible. However, the enhancing qualitative characteristics, either individually or as a group, cannot make information useful if that information is irrelevant or does not provide a faithful representation of what it purports to represent.
- 2.38 Applying the enhancing qualitative characteristics is an iterative process that does not follow a prescribed order. Sometimes, one enhancing qualitative characteristic may have to be diminished to maximise another qualitative characteristic. For example, a temporary reduction in comparability as a result of prospectively applying a new Standard may be worthwhile to improve relevance or faithful representation in the longer term. Appropriate disclosures may partially compensate for non-comparability.

The cost constraint on useful financial reporting

- 2.39 Cost is a pervasive constraint on the information that can be provided by financial reporting. Reporting financial information imposes costs, and it is important that those costs are justified by the benefits of reporting that information. There are several types of costs and benefits to consider.
- 2.40 Providers of financial information expend most of the effort involved in collecting, processing, verifying and disseminating financial information, but users ultimately bear those costs in the form of reduced returns. Users of financial information also incur costs of analysing and interpreting the information provided. If needed information is not provided, users incur additional costs to obtain that information elsewhere or to estimate it.
- 2.41 Reporting financial information that is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent helps users to make decisions with more confidence. This results in more efficient functioning of capital markets and a lower cost of capital for the economy as a whole. An individual investor, lender or other creditor also receives benefits by making more informed decisions. However, it is not possible for general purpose financial reports to provide all the information that every user finds relevant.

- 2.42 In applying the cost constraint, the HKICPA assesses whether the benefits of reporting particular information are likely to justify the costs incurred to provide and use that information. When applying the cost constraint in developing a proposed Standard or an Accounting Guideline, the HKICPA seeks information from providers of financial information, users, auditors, academics and others about the expected nature and quantity of the benefits and costs of that Standard. In most situations, assessments are based on a combination of quantitative and qualitative information.
- 2.43 Because of the inherent subjectivity, different individuals' assessments of the costs and benefits of reporting particular items of financial information will vary. Therefore, the HKICPA seeks to consider costs and benefits in relation to financial reporting generally, and not just in relation to individual reporting entities. That does not mean that assessments of costs and benefits always justify the same reporting requirements for all entities. Differences may be appropriate because of different sizes of entities, different ways of raising capital (publicly or privately), different users' needs or other factors.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 3—FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND THE REPORTING ENTITY

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	3.1
Objective and scope of financial statements	3.2
Reporting period	3.4
Perspective adopted in financial statements	3.8
Going concern assumption	3.9
THE REPORTING ENTITY	3.10
Consolidated and unconsolidated financial statements	3.15

Financial statements

- 3.1 Chapters 1 and 2 discuss information provided in general purpose financial reports and Chapters 3–8 discuss information provided in general purpose financial statements, which are a particular form of general purpose financial reports. Financial statements⁷ provide information about economic resources of the reporting entity, claims against the entity, and changes in those resources and claims, that meet the definitions of the elements of financial statements (see Table 4.1).

Objective and scope of financial statements

- 3.2 The objective of financial statements is to provide financial information about the reporting entity's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses⁸ that is useful to users of financial statements in assessing the prospects for future net cash inflows to the reporting entity and in assessing management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources (see paragraph 1.3).
- 3.3 That information is provided:
- (a) in the statement of financial position, by recognising assets, liabilities and equity;
 - (b) in the statement(s) of financial performance,⁹ by recognising income and expenses; and
 - (c) in other statements and notes, by presenting and disclosing information about:
 - (i) recognised assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses (see paragraph 5.1), including information about their nature and about the risks arising from those recognised assets and liabilities;
 - (ii) assets and liabilities that have not been recognised (see paragraph 5.6), including information about their nature and about the risks arising from them;
 - (iii) cash flows;
 - (iv) contributions from holders of equity claims and distributions to them; and
 - (v) the methods, assumptions and judgements used in estimating the amounts presented or disclosed, and changes in those methods, assumptions and judgements.

Reporting period

- 3.4 Financial statements are prepared for a specified period of time (reporting period) and provide information about:
- (a) assets and liabilities—including unrecognised assets and liabilities—and equity that existed at the end of the reporting period, or during the reporting period; and
 - (b) income and expenses for the reporting period.
- 3.5 To help users of financial statements to identify and assess changes and trends, financial statements also provide comparative information for at least one preceding reporting period.

7 Throughout the *Conceptual Framework*, the term 'financial statements' refers to general purpose financial statements.

8 Assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses are defined in Table 4.1. They are the elements of financial statements.

9 The *Conceptual Framework* does not specify whether the statement(s) of financial performance comprise(s) a single statement or two statements.

3.6 Information about possible future transactions and other possible future events (forward-looking information) is included in financial statements if it:

- (a) relates to the entity's assets or liabilities—including unrecognised assets or liabilities—or equity that existed at the end of the reporting period, or during the reporting period, or to income or expenses for the reporting period; and
- (b) is useful to users of financial statements.

For example, if an asset or liability is measured by estimating future cash flows, information about those estimated future cash flows may help users of financial statements to understand the reported measures. Financial statements do not typically provide other types of forward-looking information, for example, explanatory material about management's expectations and strategies for the reporting entity.

3.7 Financial statements include information about transactions and other events that have occurred after the end of the reporting period if providing that information is necessary to meet the objective of financial statements (see paragraph 3.2).

Perspective adopted in financial statements

3.8 Financial statements provide information about transactions and other events viewed from the perspective of the reporting entity as a whole, not from the perspective of any particular group of the entity's existing or potential investors, lenders or other creditors.

Going concern assumption

3.9 Financial statements are normally prepared on the assumption that the reporting entity is a going concern and will continue in operation for the foreseeable future. Hence, it is assumed that the entity has neither the intention nor the need to enter liquidation or to cease trading. If such an intention or need exists, the financial statements may have to be prepared on a different basis. If so, the financial statements describe the basis used.

The reporting entity

3.10 A reporting entity is an entity that is required, or chooses, to prepare financial statements. A reporting entity can be a single entity or a portion of an entity or can comprise more than one entity. A reporting entity is not necessarily a legal entity.

3.11 Sometimes one entity (parent) has control over another entity (subsidiary). If a reporting entity comprises both the parent and its subsidiaries, the reporting entity's financial statements are referred to as 'consolidated financial statements' (see paragraphs 3.15–3.16). If a reporting entity is the parent alone, the reporting entity's financial statements are referred to as 'unconsolidated financial statements' (see paragraphs 3.17–3.18).

3.12 If a reporting entity comprises two or more entities that are not all linked by a parent-subsidiary relationship, the reporting entity's financial statements are referred to as 'combined financial statements'.

3.13 Determining the appropriate boundary of a reporting entity can be difficult if the reporting entity:

- (a) is not a legal entity; and
- (b) does not comprise only legal entities linked by a parent-subsidiary relationship.

3.14 In such cases, determining the boundary of the reporting entity is driven by the information needs of the primary users of the reporting entity's financial statements. Those users need relevant information that faithfully represents what it purports to represent. Faithful representation requires that:

- (a) the boundary of the reporting entity does not contain an arbitrary or incomplete set of economic activities;
- (b) including that set of economic activities within the boundary of the reporting entity results in neutral information; and
- (c) a description is provided of how the boundary of the reporting entity was determined and of what constitutes the reporting entity.

Consolidated and unconsolidated financial statements

- 3.15 Consolidated financial statements provide information about the assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses of both the parent and its subsidiaries as a single reporting entity. That information is useful for existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of the parent in their assessment of the prospects for future net cash inflows to the parent. This is because net cash inflows to the parent include distributions to the parent from its subsidiaries, and those distributions depend on net cash inflows to the subsidiaries.
- 3.16 Consolidated financial statements are not designed to provide separate information about the assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses of any particular subsidiary. A subsidiary's own financial statements are designed to provide that information.
- 3.17 Unconsolidated financial statements are designed to provide information about the parent's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses, and not about those of its subsidiaries. That information can be useful to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of the parent because:
- (a) a claim against the parent typically does not give the holder of that claim a claim against subsidiaries; and
 - (b) in some jurisdictions, the amounts that can be legally distributed to holders of equity claims against the parent depend on the distributable reserves of the parent.

Another way to provide information about some or all assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses of the parent alone is in consolidated financial statements, in the notes.

- 3.18 Information provided in unconsolidated financial statements is typically not sufficient to meet the information needs of existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of the parent. Accordingly, when consolidated financial statements are required, unconsolidated financial statements cannot serve as a substitute for consolidated financial statements. Nevertheless, a parent may be required, or choose, to prepare unconsolidated financial statements in addition to consolidated financial statements.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 4—THE ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

INTRODUCTION	4.1
DEFINITION OF AN ASSET	4.3
Right	4.6
Potential to produce economic benefits	4.14
Control	4.19
DEFINITION OF A LIABILITY	4.26
Obligation	4.28
Transfer of an economic resource	4.36
Present obligation as a result of past events	4.42
ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	4.48
Unit of account	4.48
Executory contracts	4.56
Substance of contractual rights and contractual obligations	4.59
DEFINITION OF EQUITY	4.63
DEFINITIONS OF INCOME AND EXPENSES	4.68

Introduction

- 4.1 The elements of financial statements defined in the *Conceptual Framework* are:
- (a) assets, liabilities and equity, which relate to a reporting entity's financial position; and
 - (b) income and expenses, which relate to a reporting entity's financial performance.
- 4.2 Those elements are linked to the economic resources, claims and changes in economic resources and claims discussed in Chapter 1, and are defined in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1—The elements of financial statements

Item discussed in Chapter 1	Element	Definition or description
Economic resource	Asset	A present economic resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events. An economic resource is a right that has the potential to produce economic benefits.
Claim	Liability	A present obligation of the entity to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events.
	Equity	The residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities.
Changes in economic resources and claims, reflecting financial performance	Income	Increases in assets, or decreases in liabilities, that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from holders of equity claims.
	Expenses	Decreases in assets, or increases in liabilities, that result in decreases in equity, other than those relating to distributions to holders of equity claims.
Other changes in economic resources and claims	–	Contributions from holders of equity claims, and distributions to them.
	–	Exchanges of assets or liabilities that do not result in increases or decreases in equity.

Definition of an asset

- 4.3 An asset is a present economic resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events.
- 4.4 An economic resource is a right that has the potential to produce economic benefits.
- 4.5 This section discusses three aspects of those definitions:
- (a) right (see paragraphs 4.6–4.13);
 - (b) potential to produce economic benefits (see paragraphs 4.14–4.18); and
 - (c) control (see paragraphs 4.19–4.25).

Right

- 4.6 Rights that have the potential to produce economic benefits take many forms, including:
- (a) rights that correspond to an obligation of another party (see paragraph 4.39), for example:
 - (i) rights to receive cash.
 - (ii) rights to receive goods or services.
 - (iii) rights to exchange economic resources with another party on favourable terms. Such rights include, for example, a forward contract to buy an economic resource on terms that are currently favourable or an option to buy an economic resource.
 - (iv) rights to benefit from an obligation of another party to transfer an economic resource if a specified uncertain future event occurs (see paragraph 4.37).
 - (b) rights that do not correspond to an obligation of another party, for example:
 - (i) rights over physical objects, such as property, plant and equipment or inventories. Examples of such rights are a right to use a physical object or a right to benefit from the residual value of a leased object.
 - (ii) rights to use intellectual property.
- 4.7 Many rights are established by contract, legislation or similar means. For example, an entity might obtain rights from owning or leasing a physical object, from owning a debt instrument or an equity instrument, or from owning a registered patent. However, an entity might also obtain rights in other ways, for example:
- (a) by acquiring or creating know-how that is not in the public domain (see paragraph 4.22); or
 - (b) through an obligation of another party that arises because that other party has no practical ability to act in a manner inconsistent with its customary practices, published policies or specific statements (see paragraph 4.31).
- 4.8 Some goods or services—for example, employee services—are received and immediately consumed. An entity's right to obtain the economic benefits produced by such goods or services exists momentarily until the entity consumes the goods or services.
- 4.9 Not all of an entity's rights are assets of that entity—to be assets of the entity, the rights must both have the potential to produce for the entity economic benefits beyond the economic benefits available to all other parties (see paragraphs 4.14–4.18) and be controlled by the entity (see paragraphs 4.19–4.25). For example, rights available to all parties without significant cost—for instance, rights of access to public goods, such as public rights of way over land, or know-how that is in the public domain—are typically not assets for the entities that hold them.

- 4.10 An entity cannot have a right to obtain economic benefits from itself. Hence:
- (a) debt instruments or equity instruments issued by the entity and repurchased and held by it—for example, treasury shares—are not economic resources of that entity; and
 - (b) if a reporting entity comprises more than one legal entity, debt instruments or equity instruments issued by one of those legal entities and held by another of those legal entities are not economic resources of the reporting entity.
- 4.11 In principle, each of an entity's rights is a separate asset. However, for accounting purposes, related rights are often treated as a single unit of account that is a single asset (see paragraphs 4.48–4.55). For example, legal ownership of a physical object may give rise to several rights, including:
- (a) the right to use the object;
 - (b) the right to sell rights over the object;
 - (c) the right to pledge rights over the object; and
 - (d) other rights not listed in (a)–(c).
- 4.12 In many cases, the set of rights arising from legal ownership of a physical object is accounted for as a single asset. Conceptually, the economic resource is the set of rights, not the physical object. Nevertheless, describing the set of rights as the physical object will often provide a faithful representation of those rights in the most concise and understandable way.
- 4.13 In some cases, it is uncertain whether a right exists. For example, an entity and another party might dispute whether the entity has a right to receive an economic resource from that other party. Until that existence uncertainty is resolved—for example, by a court ruling—it is uncertain whether the entity has a right and, consequently, whether an asset exists. (Paragraph 5.14 discusses recognition of assets whose existence is uncertain.)

Potential to produce economic benefits

- 4.14 An economic resource is a right that has the potential to produce economic benefits. For that potential to exist, it does not need to be certain, or even likely, that the right will produce economic benefits. It is only necessary that the right already exists and that, in at least one circumstance, it would produce for the entity economic benefits beyond those available to all other parties.
- 4.15 A right can meet the definition of an economic resource, and hence can be an asset, even if the probability that it will produce economic benefits is low. Nevertheless, that low probability might affect decisions about what information to provide about the asset and how to provide that information, including decisions about whether the asset is recognised (see paragraphs 5.15–5.17) and how it is measured.
- 4.16 An economic resource could produce economic benefits for an entity by entitling or enabling it to do, for example, one or more of the following:
- (a) receive contractual cash flows or another economic resource;
 - (b) exchange economic resources with another party on favourable terms;
 - (c) produce cash inflows or avoid cash outflows by, for example:
 - (i) using the economic resource either individually or in combination with other economic resources to produce goods or provide services;
 - (ii) using the economic resource to enhance the value of other economic resources; or
 - (iii) leasing the economic resource to another party;
 - (d) receive cash or other economic resources by selling the economic resource; or
 - (e) extinguish liabilities by transferring the economic resource.

- 4.17 Although an economic resource derives its value from its present potential to produce future economic benefits, the economic resource is the present right that contains that potential, not the future economic benefits that the right may produce. For example, a purchased option derives its value from its potential to produce economic benefits through exercise of the option at a future date. However, the economic resource is the present right—the right to exercise the option at a future date. The economic resource is not the future economic benefits that the holder will receive if the option is exercised.
- 4.18 There is a close association between incurring expenditure and acquiring assets, but the two do not necessarily coincide. Hence, when an entity incurs expenditure, this may provide evidence that the entity has sought future economic benefits, but does not provide conclusive proof that the entity has obtained an asset. Similarly, the absence of related expenditure does not preclude an item from meeting the definition of an asset. Assets can include, for example, rights that a government has granted to the entity free of charge or that another party has donated to the entity.

Control

- 4.19 Control links an economic resource to an entity. Assessing whether control exists helps to identify the economic resource for which the entity accounts. For example, an entity may control a proportionate share in a property without controlling the rights arising from ownership of the entire property. In such cases, the entity's asset is the share in the property, which it controls, not the rights arising from ownership of the entire property, which it does not control.
- 4.20 An entity controls an economic resource if it has the present ability to direct the use of the economic resource and obtain the economic benefits that may flow from it. Control includes the present ability to prevent other parties from directing the use of the economic resource and from obtaining the economic benefits that may flow from it. It follows that, if one party controls an economic resource, no other party controls that resource.
- 4.21 An entity has the present ability to direct the use of an economic resource if it has the right to deploy that economic resource in its activities, or to allow another party to deploy the economic resource in that other party's activities.
- 4.22 Control of an economic resource usually arises from an ability to enforce legal rights. However, control can also arise if an entity has other means of ensuring that it, and no other party, has the present ability to direct the use of the economic resource and obtain the benefits that may flow from it. For example, an entity could control a right to use know-how that is not in the public domain if the entity has access to the know-how and the present ability to keep the know-how secret, even if that know-how is not protected by a registered patent.
- 4.23 For an entity to control an economic resource, the future economic benefits from that resource must flow to the entity either directly or indirectly rather than to another party. This aspect of control does not imply that the entity can ensure that the resource will produce economic benefits in all circumstances. Instead, it means that if the resource produces economic benefits, the entity is the party that will obtain them either directly or indirectly.
- 4.24 Having exposure to significant variations in the amount of the economic benefits produced by an economic resource may indicate that the entity controls the resource. However, it is only one factor to consider in the overall assessment of whether control exists.
- 4.25 Sometimes one party (a principal) engages another party (an agent) to act on behalf of, and for the benefit of, the principal. For example, a principal may engage an agent to arrange sales of goods controlled by the principal. If an agent has custody of an economic resource controlled by the principal, that economic resource is not an asset of the agent. Furthermore, if the agent has an obligation to transfer to a third party an economic resource controlled by the principal, that obligation is not a liability of the agent, because the economic resource that would be transferred is the principal's economic resource, not the agent's.

Definition of a liability

- 4.26 A liability is a present obligation of the entity to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events.
- 4.27 For a liability to exist, three criteria must all be satisfied:
- (a) the entity has an obligation (see paragraphs 4.28–4.35);
 - (b) the obligation is to transfer an economic resource (see paragraphs 4.36–4.41); and
 - (c) the obligation is a present obligation that exists as a result of past events (see paragraphs 4.42–4.47).

Obligation

- 4.28 The first criterion for a liability is that the entity has an obligation.
- 4.29 An obligation is a duty or responsibility that an entity has no practical ability to avoid. An obligation is always owed to another party (or parties). The other party (or parties) could be a person or another entity, a group of people or other entities, or society at large. It is not necessary to know the identity of the party (or parties) to whom the obligation is owed.
- 4.30 If one party has an obligation to transfer an economic resource, it follows that another party (or parties) has a right to receive that economic resource. However, a requirement for one party to recognise a liability and measure it at a specified amount does not imply that the other party (or parties) must recognise an asset or measure it at the same amount. For example, particular Standards may contain different recognition criteria or measurement requirements for the liability of one party and the corresponding asset of the other party (or parties) if those different criteria or requirements are a consequence of decisions intended to select the most relevant information that faithfully represents what it purports to represent.
- 4.31 Many obligations are established by contract, legislation or similar means and are legally enforceable by the party (or parties) to whom they are owed. Obligations can also arise, however, from an entity's customary practices, published policies or specific statements if the entity has no practical ability to act in a manner inconsistent with those practices, policies or statements. The obligation that arises in such situations is sometimes referred to as a 'constructive obligation'.
- 4.32 In some situations, an entity's duty or responsibility to transfer an economic resource is conditional on a particular future action that the entity itself may take. Such actions could include operating a particular business or operating in a particular market on a specified future date, or exercising particular options within a contract. In such situations, the entity has an obligation if it has no practical ability to avoid taking that action.
- 4.33 A conclusion that it is appropriate to prepare an entity's financial statements on a going concern basis also implies a conclusion that the entity has no practical ability to avoid a transfer that could be avoided only by liquidating the entity or by ceasing to trade.
- 4.34 The factors used to assess whether an entity has the practical ability to avoid transferring an economic resource may depend on the nature of the entity's duty or responsibility. For example, in some cases, an entity may have no practical ability to avoid a transfer if any action that it could take to avoid the transfer would have economic consequences significantly more adverse than the transfer itself. However, neither an intention to make a transfer, nor a high likelihood of a transfer, is sufficient reason for concluding that the entity has no practical ability to avoid a transfer.
- 4.35 In some cases, it is uncertain whether an obligation exists. For example, if another party is seeking compensation for an entity's alleged act of wrongdoing, it might be uncertain whether the act occurred, whether the entity committed it or how the law applies. Until that existence uncertainty is resolved—for example, by a court ruling—it is uncertain whether the entity has an obligation to the party seeking compensation and, consequently, whether a liability exists. (Paragraph 5.14 discusses recognition of liabilities whose existence is uncertain.)

Transfer of an economic resource

- 4.36 The second criterion for a liability is that the obligation is to transfer an economic resource.
- 4.37 To satisfy this criterion, the obligation must have the potential to require the entity to transfer an economic resource to another party (or parties). For that potential to exist, it does not need to be certain, or even likely, that the entity will be required to transfer an economic resource—the transfer may, for example, be required only if a specified uncertain future event occurs. It is only necessary that the obligation already exists and that, in at least one circumstance, it would require the entity to transfer an economic resource.
- 4.38 An obligation can meet the definition of a liability even if the probability of a transfer of an economic resource is low. Nevertheless, that low probability might affect decisions about what information to provide about the liability and how to provide that information, including decisions about whether the liability is recognised (see paragraphs 5.15–5.17) and how it is measured.
- 4.39 Obligations to transfer an economic resource include, for example:
- (a) obligations to pay cash.
 - (b) obligations to deliver goods or provide services.
 - (c) obligations to exchange economic resources with another party on unfavourable terms. Such obligations include, for example, a forward contract to sell an economic resource on terms that are currently unfavourable or an option that entitles another party to buy an economic resource from the entity.
 - (d) obligations to transfer an economic resource if a specified uncertain future event occurs.
 - (e) obligations to issue a financial instrument if that financial instrument will oblige the entity to transfer an economic resource.
- 4.40 Instead of fulfilling an obligation to transfer an economic resource to the party that has a right to receive that resource, entities sometimes decide to, for example:
- (a) settle the obligation by negotiating a release from the obligation;
 - (b) transfer the obligation to a third party; or
 - (c) replace that obligation to transfer an economic resource with another obligation by entering into a new transaction.
- 4.41 In the situations described in paragraph 4.40, an entity has the obligation to transfer an economic resource until it has settled, transferred or replaced that obligation.

Present obligation as a result of past events

- 4.42 The third criterion for a liability is that the obligation is a present obligation that exists as a result of past events.
- 4.43 A present obligation exists as a result of past events only if:
- (a) the entity has already obtained economic benefits or taken an action; and
 - (b) as a consequence, the entity will or may have to transfer an economic resource that it would not otherwise have had to transfer.
- 4.44 The economic benefits obtained could include, for example, goods or services. The action taken could include, for example, operating a particular business or operating in a particular market. If economic benefits are obtained, or an action is taken, over time, the resulting present obligation may accumulate over that time.

- 4.45 If new legislation is enacted, a present obligation arises only when, as a consequence of obtaining economic benefits or taking an action to which that legislation applies, an entity will or may have to transfer an economic resource that it would not otherwise have had to transfer. The enactment of legislation is not in itself sufficient to give an entity a present obligation. Similarly, an entity's customary practice, published policy or specific statement of the type mentioned in paragraph 4.31 gives rise to a present obligation only when, as a consequence of obtaining economic benefits, or taking an action, to which that practice, policy or statement applies, the entity will or may have to transfer an economic resource that it would not otherwise have had to transfer.
- 4.46 A present obligation can exist even if a transfer of economic resources cannot be enforced until some point in the future. For example, a contractual liability to pay cash may exist now even if the contract does not require a payment until a future date. Similarly, a contractual obligation for an entity to perform work at a future date may exist now even if the counterparty cannot require the entity to perform the work until that future date.
- 4.47 An entity does not yet have a present obligation to transfer an economic resource if it has not yet satisfied the criteria in paragraph 4.43, that is, if it has not yet obtained economic benefits, or taken an action, that would or could require the entity to transfer an economic resource that it would not otherwise have had to transfer. For example, if an entity has entered into a contract to pay an employee a salary in exchange for receiving the employee's services, the entity does not have a present obligation to pay the salary until it has received the employee's services. Before then the contract is executory—the entity has a combined right and obligation to exchange future salary for future employee services (see paragraphs 4.56–4.58).

Assets and liabilities

Unit of account

- 4.48 The unit of account is the right or the group of rights, the obligation or the group of obligations, or the group of rights and obligations, to which recognition criteria and measurement concepts are applied.
- 4.49 A unit of account is selected for an asset or liability when considering how recognition criteria and measurement concepts will apply to that asset or liability and to the related income and expenses. In some circumstances, it may be appropriate to select one unit of account for recognition and a different unit of account for measurement. For example, contracts may sometimes be recognised individually but measured as part of a portfolio of contracts. For presentation and disclosure, assets, liabilities, income and expenses may need to be aggregated or separated into components.
- 4.50 If an entity transfers part of an asset or part of a liability, the unit of account may change at that time, so that the transferred component and the retained component become separate units of account (see paragraphs 5.26–5.33).
- 4.51 A unit of account is selected to provide useful information, which implies that:
- (a) the information provided about the asset or liability and about any related income and expenses must be relevant. Treating a group of rights and obligations as a single unit of account may provide more relevant information than treating each right or obligation as a separate unit of account if, for example, those rights and obligations:
 - (i) cannot be or are unlikely to be the subject of separate transactions;
 - (ii) cannot or are unlikely to expire in different patterns;
 - (iii) have similar economic characteristics and risks and hence are likely to have similar implications for the prospects for future net cash inflows to the entity or net cash outflows from the entity; or

- (iv) are used together in the business activities conducted by an entity to produce cash flows and are measured by reference to estimates of their interdependent future cash flows.
 - (b) the information provided about the asset or liability and about any related income and expenses must faithfully represent the substance of the transaction or other event from which they have arisen. Therefore, it may be necessary to treat rights or obligations arising from different sources as a single unit of account, or to separate the rights or obligations arising from a single source (see paragraph 4.62). Equally, to provide a faithful representation of unrelated rights and obligations, it may be necessary to recognise and measure them separately.
- 4.52 Just as cost constrains other financial reporting decisions, it also constrains the selection of a unit of account. Hence, in selecting a unit of account, it is important to consider whether the benefits of the information provided to users of financial statements by selecting that unit of account are likely to justify the costs of providing and using that information. In general, the costs associated with recognising and measuring assets, liabilities, income and expenses increase as the size of the unit of account decreases. Hence, in general, rights or obligations arising from the same source are separated only if the resulting information is more useful and the benefits outweigh the costs.
- 4.53 Sometimes, both rights and obligations arise from the same source. For example, some contracts establish both rights and obligations for each of the parties. If those rights and obligations are interdependent and cannot be separated, they constitute a single inseparable asset or liability and hence form a single unit of account. For example, this is the case with executory contracts (see paragraph 4.57). Conversely, if rights are separable from obligations, it may sometimes be appropriate to group the rights separately from the obligations, resulting in the identification of one or more separate assets and liabilities. In other cases, it may be more appropriate to group separable rights and obligations in a single unit of account treating them as a single asset or a single liability.
- 4.54 Treating a set of rights and obligations as a single unit of account differs from offsetting assets and liabilities (see paragraph 7.10).
- 4.55 Possible units of account include:
- (a) an individual right or individual obligation;
 - (b) all rights, all obligations, or all rights and all obligations, arising from a single source, for example, a contract;
 - (c) a subgroup of those rights and/or obligations—for example, a subgroup of rights over an item of property, plant and equipment for which the useful life and pattern of consumption differ from those of the other rights over that item;
 - (d) a group of rights and/or obligations arising from a portfolio of similar items;
 - (e) a group of rights and/or obligations arising from a portfolio of dissimilar items—for example, a portfolio of assets and liabilities to be disposed of in a single transaction; and
 - (f) a risk exposure within a portfolio of items—if a portfolio of items is subject to a common risk, some aspects of the accounting for that portfolio could focus on the aggregate exposure to that risk within the portfolio.

Executory contracts

- 4.56 An executory contract is a contract, or a portion of a contract, that is equally unperformed—neither party has fulfilled any of its obligations, or both parties have partially fulfilled their obligations to an equal extent.
- 4.57 An executory contract establishes a combined right and obligation to exchange economic resources. The right and obligation are interdependent and cannot be separated. Hence, the combined right and obligation constitute a single asset or liability. The entity has an asset if the terms of the exchange are currently favourable; it has a liability if the terms of the exchange are currently unfavourable. Whether such an asset or liability is included in the financial statements depends on both the recognition criteria (see Chapter 5) and the measurement basis (see Chapter 6) selected for the asset or liability, including, if applicable, any test for whether the contract is onerous.
- 4.58 To the extent that either party fulfils its obligations under the contract, the contract is no longer executory. If the reporting entity performs first under the contract, that performance is the event that changes the reporting entity's right and obligation to exchange economic resources into a right to receive an economic resource. That right is an asset. If the other party performs first, that performance is the event that changes the reporting entity's right and obligation to exchange economic resources into an obligation to transfer an economic resource. That obligation is a liability.

Substance of contractual rights and contractual obligations

- 4.59 The terms of a contract create rights and obligations for an entity that is a party to that contract. To represent those rights and obligations faithfully, financial statements report their substance (see paragraph 2.12). In some cases, the substance of the rights and obligations is clear from the legal form of the contract. In other cases, the terms of the contract or a group or series of contracts require analysis to identify the substance of the rights and obligations.
- 4.60 All terms in a contract—whether explicit or implicit—are considered unless they have no substance. Implicit terms could include, for example, obligations imposed by statute, such as statutory warranty obligations imposed on entities that enter into contracts to sell goods to customers.
- 4.61 Terms that have no substance are disregarded. A term has no substance if it has no discernible effect on the economics of the contract. Terms that have no substance could include, for example:
- (a) terms that bind neither party; or
 - (b) rights, including options, that the holder will not have the practical ability to exercise in any circumstances.
- 4.62 A group or series of contracts may achieve or be designed to achieve an overall commercial effect. To report the substance of such contracts, it may be necessary to treat rights and obligations arising from that group or series of contracts as a single unit of account. For example, if the rights or obligations in one contract merely nullify all the rights or obligations in another contract entered into at the same time with the same counterparty, the combined effect is that the two contracts create no rights or obligations. Conversely, if a single contract creates two or more sets of rights or obligations that could have been created through two or more separate contracts, an entity may need to account for each set as if it arose from separate contracts in order to faithfully represent the rights and obligations (see paragraphs 4.48–4.55).

Definition of equity

- 4.63 Equity is the residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities.
- 4.64 Equity claims are claims on the residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities. In other words, they are claims against the entity that do not meet the definition of a liability. Such claims may be established by contract, legislation or similar means, and include, to the extent that they do not meet the definition of a liability:
- (a) shares of various types, issued by the entity; and
 - (b) some obligations of the entity to issue another equity claim.
- 4.65 Different classes of equity claims, such as ordinary shares and preference shares, may confer on their holders different rights, for example, rights to receive some or all of the following from the entity:
- (a) dividends, if the entity decides to pay dividends to eligible holders;
 - (b) the proceeds from satisfying the equity claims, either in full on liquidation, or in part at other times; or
 - (c) other equity claims.
- 4.66 Sometimes, legal, regulatory or other requirements affect particular components of equity, such as share capital or retained earnings. For example, some such requirements permit an entity to make distributions to holders of equity claims only if the entity has sufficient reserves that those requirements specify as being distributable.
- 4.67 Business activities are often undertaken by entities such as sole proprietorships, partnerships, trusts or various types of government business undertakings. The legal and regulatory frameworks for such entities are often different from frameworks that apply to corporate entities. For example, there may be few, if any, restrictions on the distribution to holders of equity claims against such entities. Nevertheless, the definition of equity in paragraph 4.63 of the *Conceptual Framework* applies to all reporting entities.

Definitions of income and expenses

- 4.68 Income is increases in assets, or decreases in liabilities, that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from holders of equity claims.
- 4.69 Expenses are decreases in assets, or increases in liabilities, that result in decreases in equity, other than those relating to distributions to holders of equity claims.
- 4.70 It follows from these definitions of income and expenses that contributions from holders of equity claims are not income, and distributions to holders of equity claims are not expenses.
- 4.71 Income and expenses are the elements of financial statements that relate to an entity's financial performance. Users of financial statements need information about both an entity's financial position and its financial performance. Hence, although income and expenses are defined in terms of changes in assets and liabilities, information about income and expenses is just as important as information about assets and liabilities.
- 4.72 Different transactions and other events generate income and expenses with different characteristics. Providing information separately about income and expenses with different characteristics can help users of financial statements to understand the entity's financial performance (see paragraphs 7.14–7.19).

from paragraph

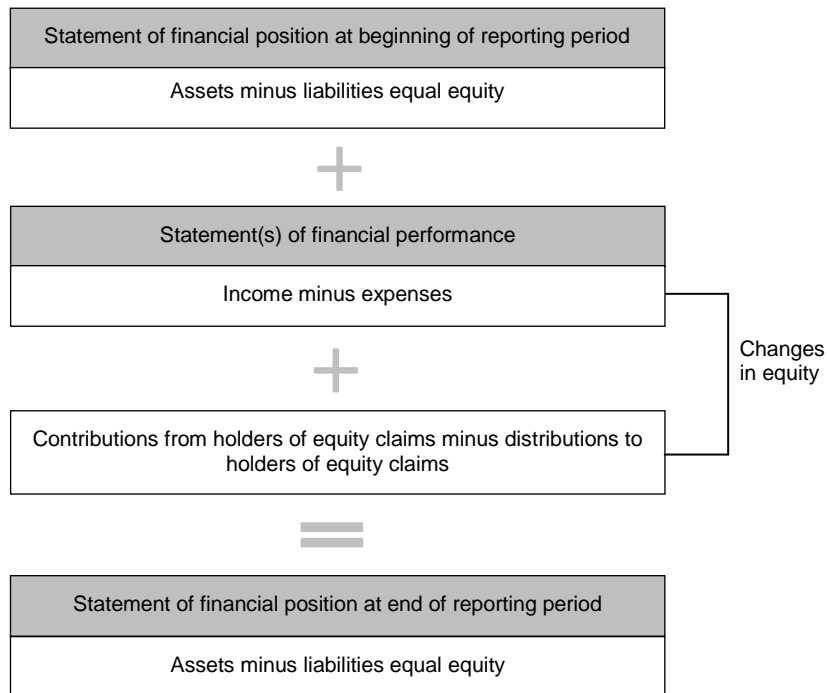
CHAPTER 5—RECOGNITION AND DERECOGNITION

THE RECOGNITION PROCESS	5.1
RECOGNITION CRITERIA	5.6
Relevance	5.12
Existence uncertainty	5.14
Low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits	5.15
Faithful representation	5.18
Measurement uncertainty	5.19
Other factors	5.24
DERECOGNITION	5.26

The recognition process

- 5.1 Recognition is the process of capturing for inclusion in the statement of financial position or the statement(s) of financial performance an item that meets the definition of one of the elements of financial statements—an asset, a liability, equity, income or expenses. Recognition involves depicting the item in one of those statements—either alone or in aggregation with other items—in words and by a monetary amount, and including that amount in one or more totals in that statement. The amount at which an asset, a liability or equity is recognised in the statement of financial position is referred to as its 'carrying amount'.
- 5.2 The statement of financial position and statement(s) of financial performance depict an entity's recognised assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses in structured summaries that are designed to make financial information comparable and understandable. An important feature of the structures of those summaries is that the amounts recognised in a statement are included in the totals and, if applicable, subtotals that link the items recognised in the statement.
- 5.3 Recognition links the elements, the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance as follows (see Diagram 5.1):
- (a) in the statement of financial position at the beginning and end of the reporting period, total assets minus total liabilities equal total equity; and
 - (b) recognised changes in equity during the reporting period comprise:
 - (i) income minus expenses recognised in the statement(s) of financial performance; plus
 - (ii) contributions from holders of equity claims, minus distributions to holders of equity claims.
- 5.4 The statements are linked because the recognition of one item (or a change in its carrying amount) requires the recognition or derecognition of one or more other items (or changes in the carrying amount of one or more other items). For example:
- (a) the recognition of income occurs at the same time as:
 - (i) the initial recognition of an asset, or an increase in the carrying amount of an asset; or
 - (ii) the derecognition of a liability, or a decrease in the carrying amount of a liability.
 - (b) the recognition of expenses occurs at the same time as:
 - (i) the initial recognition of a liability, or an increase in the carrying amount of a liability; or
 - (ii) the derecognition of an asset, or a decrease in the carrying amount of an asset.

Diagram 5.1: How recognition links the elements of financial statements



- 5.5 The initial recognition of assets or liabilities arising from transactions or other events may result in the simultaneous recognition of both income and related expenses. For example, the sale of goods for cash results in the recognition of both income (from the recognition of one asset—the cash) and an expense (from the derecognition of another asset—the goods sold). The simultaneous recognition of income and related expenses is sometimes referred to as the matching of costs with income. Application of the concepts in the *Conceptual Framework* leads to such matching when it arises from the recognition of changes in assets and liabilities. However, matching of costs with income is not an objective of the *Conceptual Framework*. The *Conceptual Framework* does not allow the recognition in the statement of financial position of items that do not meet the definition of an asset, a liability or equity.

Recognition criteria

- 5.6 Only items that meet the definition of an asset, a liability or equity are recognised in the statement of financial position. Similarly, only items that meet the definition of income or expenses are recognised in the statement(s) of financial performance. However, not all items that meet the definition of one of those elements are recognised.
- 5.7 Not recognising an item that meets the definition of one of the elements makes the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance less complete and can exclude useful information from financial statements. On the other hand, in some circumstances, recognising some items that meet the definition of one of the elements would not provide useful information. An asset or liability is recognised only if recognition of that asset or liability and of any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity provides users of financial statements with information that is useful, ie with:
- (a) relevant information about the asset or liability and about any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity (see paragraphs 5.12–5.17); and
 - (b) a faithful representation of the asset or liability and of any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity (see paragraphs 5.18–5.25).

- 5.8 Just as cost constrains other financial reporting decisions, it also constrains recognition decisions. There is a cost to recognising an asset or liability. Preparers of financial statements incur costs in obtaining a relevant measure of an asset or liability. Users of financial statements also incur costs in analysing and interpreting the information provided. An asset or liability is recognised if the benefits of the information provided to users of financial statements by recognition are likely to justify the costs of providing and using that information. In some cases, the costs of recognition may outweigh its benefits.
- 5.9 It is not possible to define precisely when recognition of an asset or liability will provide useful information to users of financial statements, at a cost that does not outweigh its benefits. What is useful to users depends on the item and the facts and circumstances. Consequently, judgement is required when deciding whether to recognise an item, and thus recognition requirements may need to vary between and within Standards.
- 5.10 It is important when making decisions about recognition to consider the information that would be given if an asset or liability were not recognised. For example, if no asset is recognised when expenditure is incurred, an expense is recognised. Over time, recognising the expense may, in some cases, provide useful information, for example, information that enables users of financial statements to identify trends.
- 5.11 Even if an item meeting the definition of an asset or liability is not recognised, an entity may need to provide information about that item in the notes. It is important to consider how to make such information sufficiently visible to compensate for the item's absence from the structured summary provided by the statement of financial position and, if applicable, the statement(s) of financial performance.

Relevance

- 5.12 Information about assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses is relevant to users of financial statements. However, recognition of a particular asset or liability and any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity may not always provide relevant information. That may be the case if, for example:
- (a) it is uncertain whether an asset or liability exists (see paragraph 5.14); or
 - (b) an asset or liability exists, but the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is low (see paragraphs 5.15–5.17).
- 5.13 The presence of one or both of the factors described in paragraph 5.12 does not lead automatically to a conclusion that the information provided by recognition lacks relevance. Moreover, factors other than those described in paragraph 5.12 may also affect the conclusion. It may be a combination of factors and not any single factor that determines whether recognition provides relevant information.

Existence uncertainty

- 5.14 Paragraphs 4.13 and 4.35 discuss cases in which it is uncertain whether an asset or liability exists. In some cases, that uncertainty, possibly combined with a low probability of inflows or outflows of economic benefits and an exceptionally wide range of possible outcomes, may mean that the recognition of an asset or liability, necessarily measured at a single amount, would not provide relevant information. Whether or not the asset or liability is recognised, explanatory information about the uncertainties associated with it may need to be provided in the financial statements.

Low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits

- 5.15 An asset or liability can exist even if the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is low (see paragraphs 4.15 and 4.38).
- 5.16 If the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is low, the most relevant information about the asset or liability may be information about the magnitude of the possible inflows or outflows, their possible timing and the factors affecting the probability of their occurrence. The typical location for such information is in the notes.
- 5.17 Even if the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is low, recognition of the asset or liability may provide relevant information beyond the information described in paragraph 5.16. Whether that is the case may depend on a variety of factors. For example:
- (a) if an asset is acquired or a liability is incurred in an exchange transaction on market terms, its cost generally reflects the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits. Thus, that cost may be relevant information, and is generally readily available. Furthermore, not recognising the asset or liability would result in the recognition of expenses or income at the time of the exchange, which might not be a faithful representation of the transaction (see paragraph 5.25(a)).
 - (b) if an asset or liability arises from an event that is not an exchange transaction, recognition of the asset or liability typically results in recognition of income or expenses. If there is only a low probability that the asset or liability will result in an inflow or outflow of economic benefits, users of financial statements might not regard the recognition of the asset and income, or the liability and expenses, as providing relevant information.

Faithful representation

- 5.18 Recognition of a particular asset or liability is appropriate if it provides not only relevant information, but also a faithful representation of that asset or liability and of any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity. Whether a faithful representation can be provided may be affected by the level of measurement uncertainty associated with the asset or liability or by other factors.

Measurement uncertainty

- 5.19 For an asset or liability to be recognised, it must be measured. In many cases, such measures must be estimated and are therefore subject to measurement uncertainty. As noted in paragraph 2.19, the use of reasonable estimates is an essential part of the preparation of financial information and does not undermine the usefulness of the information if the estimates are clearly and accurately described and explained. Even a high level of measurement uncertainty does not necessarily prevent such an estimate from providing useful information.
- 5.20 In some cases, the level of uncertainty involved in estimating a measure of an asset or liability may be so high that it may be questionable whether the estimate would provide a sufficiently faithful representation of that asset or liability and of any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity. The level of measurement uncertainty may be so high if, for example, the only way of estimating that measure of the asset or liability is by using cash-flow-based measurement techniques and, in addition, one or more of the following circumstances exists:
- (a) the range of possible outcomes is exceptionally wide and the probability of each outcome is exceptionally difficult to estimate.

- (b) the measure is exceptionally sensitive to small changes in estimates of the probability of different outcomes—for example, if the probability of future cash inflows or outflows occurring is exceptionally low, but the magnitude of those cash inflows or outflows will be exceptionally high if they occur.
- (c) measuring the asset or liability requires exceptionally difficult or exceptionally subjective allocations of cash flows that do not relate solely to the asset or liability being measured.

- 5.21 In some of the cases described in paragraph 5.20, the most useful information may be the measure that relies on the highly uncertain estimate, accompanied by a description of the estimate and an explanation of the uncertainties that affect it. This is especially likely to be the case if that measure is the most relevant measure of the asset or liability. In other cases, if that information would not provide a sufficiently faithful representation of the asset or liability and of any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity, the most useful information may be a different measure (accompanied by any necessary descriptions and explanations) that is slightly less relevant but is subject to lower measurement uncertainty.
- 5.22 In limited circumstances, all relevant measures of an asset or liability that are available (or can be obtained) may be subject to such high measurement uncertainty that none would provide useful information about the asset or liability (and any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity), even if the measure were accompanied by a description of the estimates made in producing it and an explanation of the uncertainties that affect those estimates. In those limited circumstances, the asset or liability would not be recognised.
- 5.23 Whether or not an asset or liability is recognised, a faithful representation of the asset or liability may need to include explanatory information about the uncertainties associated with the asset or liability's existence or measurement, or with its outcome—the amount or timing of any inflow or outflow of economic benefits that will ultimately result from it (see paragraphs 6.60–6.62).

Other factors

- 5.24 Faithful representation of a recognised asset, liability, equity, income or expenses involves not only recognition of that item, but also its measurement as well as presentation and disclosure of information about it (see Chapters 6–7).
- 5.25 Hence, when assessing whether the recognition of an asset or liability can provide a faithful representation of the asset or liability, it is necessary to consider not merely its description and measurement in the statement of financial position, but also:
- (a) the depiction of resulting income, expenses and changes in equity. For example, if an entity acquires an asset in exchange for consideration, not recognising the asset would result in recognising expenses and would reduce the entity's profit and equity. In some cases, for example, if the entity does not consume the asset immediately, that result could provide a misleading representation that the entity's financial position has deteriorated.
 - (b) whether related assets and liabilities are recognised. If they are not recognised, recognition may create a recognition inconsistency (accounting mismatch). That may not provide an understandable or faithful representation of the overall effect of the transaction or other event giving rise to the asset or liability, even if explanatory information is provided in the notes.
 - (c) presentation and disclosure of information about the asset or liability, and resulting income, expenses or changes in equity. A complete depiction includes all information necessary for a user of financial statements to understand the economic phenomenon depicted, including all necessary descriptions and explanations. Hence, presentation and disclosure of related information can enable a recognised amount to form part of a faithful representation of an asset, a liability, equity, income or expenses.

Derecognition

- 5.26 Derecognition is the removal of all or part of a recognised asset or liability from an entity's statement of financial position. Derecognition normally occurs when that item no longer meets the definition of an asset or of a liability:
- (a) for an asset, derecognition normally occurs when the entity loses control of all or part of the recognised asset; and
 - (b) for a liability, derecognition normally occurs when the entity no longer has a present obligation for all or part of the recognised liability.
- 5.27 Accounting requirements for derecognition aim to faithfully represent both:
- (a) any assets and liabilities retained after the transaction or other event that led to the derecognition (including any asset or liability acquired, incurred or created as part of the transaction or other event); and
 - (b) the change in the entity's assets and liabilities as a result of that transaction or other event.
- 5.28 The aims described in paragraph 5.27 are normally achieved by:
- (a) derecognising any assets or liabilities that have expired or have been consumed, collected, fulfilled or transferred, and recognising any resulting income and expenses. In the rest of this chapter, the term 'transferred component' refers to all those assets and liabilities;
 - (b) continuing to recognise the assets or liabilities retained, referred to as the 'retained component', if any. That retained component becomes a unit of account separate from the transferred component. Accordingly, no income or expenses are recognised on the retained component as a result of the derecognition of the transferred component, unless the derecognition results in a change in the measurement requirements applicable to the retained component; and
 - (c) applying one or more of the following procedures, if that is necessary to achieve one or both of the aims described in paragraph 5.27:
 - (i) presenting any retained component separately in the statement of financial position;
 - (ii) presenting separately in the statement(s) of financial performance any income and expenses recognised as a result of the derecognition of the transferred component; or
 - (iii) providing explanatory information.
- 5.29 In some cases, an entity might appear to transfer an asset or liability, but that asset or liability might nevertheless remain an asset or liability of the entity. For example:
- (a) if an entity has apparently transferred an asset but retains exposure to significant positive or negative variations in the amount of economic benefits that may be produced by the asset, this sometimes indicates that the entity might continue to control that asset (see paragraph 4.24); or
 - (b) if an entity has transferred an asset to another party that holds the asset as an agent for the entity, the transferor still controls the asset (see paragraph 4.25).
- 5.30 In the cases described in paragraph 5.29, derecognition of that asset or liability is not appropriate because it would not achieve either of the two aims described in paragraph 5.27.

- 5.31 When an entity no longer has a transferred component, derecognition of the transferred component faithfully represents that fact. However, in some of those cases, derecognition may not faithfully represent how much a transaction or other event changed the entity's assets or liabilities, even when supported by one or more of the procedures described in paragraph 5.28(c). In those cases, derecognition of the transferred component might imply that the entity's financial position has changed more significantly than it has. This might occur, for example:
- (a) if an entity has transferred an asset and, at the same time, entered into another transaction that results in a present right or present obligation to reacquire the asset. Such present rights or present obligations may arise from, for example, a forward contract, a written put option, or a purchased call option.
 - (b) if an entity has retained exposure to significant positive or negative variations in the amount of economic benefits that may be produced by a transferred component that the entity no longer controls.
- 5.32 If derecognition is not sufficient to achieve both aims described in paragraph 5.27, even when supported by one or more of the procedures described in paragraph 5.28(c), those two aims might sometimes be achieved by continuing to recognise the transferred component. This has the following consequences:
- (a) no income or expenses are recognised on either the retained component or the transferred component as a result of the transaction or other event;
 - (b) the proceeds received (or paid) upon transfer of the asset (or liability) are treated as a loan received (or given); and
 - (c) separate presentation of the transferred component in the statement of financial position, or provision of explanatory information, is needed to depict the fact that the entity no longer has any rights or obligations arising from the transferred component. Similarly, it may be necessary to provide information about income or expenses arising from the transferred component after the transfer.
- 5.33 One case in which questions about derecognition arise is when a contract is modified in a way that reduces or eliminates existing rights or obligations. In deciding how to account for contract modifications, it is necessary to consider which unit of account provides users of financial statements with the most useful information about the assets and liabilities retained after the modification, and about how the modification changed the entity's assets and liabilities:
- (a) if a contract modification only eliminates existing rights or obligations, the discussion in paragraphs 5.26–5.32 is considered in deciding whether to derecognise those rights or obligations;
 - (b) if a contract modification only adds new rights or obligations, it is necessary to decide whether to treat the added rights or obligations as a separate asset or liability, or as part of the same unit of account as the existing rights and obligations (see paragraphs 4.48–4.55); and
 - (c) if a contract modification both eliminates existing rights or obligations and adds new rights or obligations, it is necessary to consider both the separate and the combined effect of those modifications. In some such cases, the contract has been modified to such an extent that, in substance, the modification replaces the old asset or liability with a new asset or liability. In cases of such extensive modification, the entity may need to derecognise the original asset or liability, and recognise the new asset or liability.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 6—MEASUREMENT

INTRODUCTION	6.1
MEASUREMENT BASES	6.4
Historical cost	6.4
Current value	6.10
Fair value	6.12
Value in use and fulfilment value	6.17
Current cost	6.21
INFORMATION PROVIDED BY PARTICULAR MEASUREMENT BASES	6.23
Historical cost	6.24
Current value	6.32
Fair value	6.32
Value in use and fulfilment value	6.37
Current cost	6.40
FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN SELECTING A MEASUREMENT BASIS	6.43
Relevance	6.49
Characteristics of the asset or liability	6.50
Contribution to future cash flows	6.54
Faithful representation	6.58
Enhancing qualitative characteristics and the cost constraint	6.63
Historical cost	6.69
Current value	6.72
Factors specific to initial measurement	6.77
More than one measurement basis	6.83
MEASUREMENT OF EQUITY	6.87
CASH-FLOW-BASED MEASUREMENT TECHNIQUES	6.91

Introduction

- 6.1 Elements recognised in financial statements are quantified in monetary terms. This requires the selection of a measurement basis. A measurement basis is an identified feature—for example, historical cost, fair value or fulfilment value—of an item being measured. Applying a measurement basis to an asset or liability creates a measure for that asset or liability and for related income and expenses.
- 6.2 Consideration of the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information and of the cost constraint is likely to result in the selection of different measurement bases for different assets, liabilities, income and expenses.
- 6.3 A Standard may need to describe how to implement the measurement basis selected in that Standard. That description could include:
- (a) specifying techniques that may or must be used to estimate a measure applying a particular measurement basis;
 - (b) specifying a simplified measurement approach that is likely to provide information similar to that provided by a preferred measurement basis; or
 - (c) explaining how to modify a measurement basis, for example, by excluding from the fulfilment value of a liability the effect of the possibility that the entity may fail to fulfil that liability (own credit risk).

Measurement bases

Historical cost

- 6.4 Historical cost measures provide monetary information about assets, liabilities and related income and expenses, using information derived, at least in part, from the price of the transaction or other event that gave rise to them. Unlike current value, historical cost does not reflect changes in values, except to the extent that those changes relate to impairment of an asset or a liability becoming onerous (see paragraphs 6.7(c) and 6.8(b)).
- 6.5 The historical cost of an asset when it is acquired or created is the value of the costs incurred in acquiring or creating the asset, comprising the consideration paid to acquire or create the asset plus transaction costs. The historical cost of a liability when it is incurred or taken on is the value of the consideration received to incur or take on the liability minus transaction costs.
- 6.6 When an asset is acquired or created, or a liability is incurred or taken on, as a result of an event that is not a transaction on market terms (see paragraph 6.80), it may not be possible to identify a cost, or the cost may not provide relevant information about the asset or liability. In some such cases, a current value of the asset or liability is used as a deemed cost on initial recognition and that deemed cost is then used as a starting point for subsequent measurement at historical cost.
- 6.7 The historical cost of an asset is updated over time to depict, if applicable:
- (a) the consumption of part or all of the economic resource that constitutes the asset (depreciation or amortisation);
 - (b) payments received that extinguish part or all of the asset;
 - (c) the effect of events that cause part or all of the historical cost of the asset to be no longer recoverable (impairment); and
 - (d) accrual of interest to reflect any financing component of the asset.

- 6.8 The historical cost of a liability is updated over time to depict, if applicable:
- (a) fulfilment of part or all of the liability, for example, by making payments that extinguish part or all of the liability or by satisfying an obligation to deliver goods;
 - (b) the effect of events that increase the value of the obligation to transfer the economic resources needed to fulfil the liability to such an extent that the liability becomes onerous. A liability is onerous if the historical cost is no longer sufficient to depict the obligation to fulfil the liability; and
 - (c) accrual of interest to reflect any financing component of the liability.
- 6.9 One way to apply a historical cost measurement basis to financial assets and financial liabilities is to measure them at amortised cost. The amortised cost of a financial asset or financial liability reflects estimates of future cash flows, discounted at a rate determined at initial recognition. For variable rate instruments, the discount rate is updated to reflect changes in the variable rate. The amortised cost of a financial asset or financial liability is updated over time to depict subsequent changes, such as the accrual of interest, the impairment of a financial asset and receipts or payments.

Current value

- 6.10 Current value measures provide monetary information about assets, liabilities and related income and expenses, using information updated to reflect conditions at the measurement date. Because of the updating, current values of assets and liabilities reflect changes, since the previous measurement date, in estimates of cash flows and other factors reflected in those current values (see paragraphs 6.14–6.15 and 6.20). Unlike historical cost, the current value of an asset or liability is not derived, even in part, from the price of the transaction or other event that gave rise to the asset or liability.
- 6.11 Current value measurement bases include:
- (a) fair value (see paragraphs 6.12–6.16);
 - (b) value in use for assets and fulfilment value for liabilities (see paragraphs 6.17–6.20); and
 - (c) current cost (see paragraphs 6.21–6.22).

Fair value

- 6.12 Fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset, or paid to transfer a liability, in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date.
- 6.13 Fair value reflects the perspective of market participants—participants in a market to which the entity has access. The asset or liability is measured using the same assumptions that market participants would use when pricing the asset or liability if those market participants act in their economic best interest.
- 6.14 In some cases, fair value can be determined directly by observing prices in an active market. In other cases, it is determined indirectly using measurement techniques, for example, cash-flow-based measurement techniques (see paragraphs 6.91–6.95), reflecting all the following factors:
- (a) estimates of future cash flows.
 - (b) possible variations in the estimated amount or timing of future cash flows for the asset or liability being measured, caused by the uncertainty inherent in the cash flows.
 - (c) the time value of money.

- (d) the price for bearing the uncertainty inherent in the cash flows (a risk premium or risk discount). The price for bearing that uncertainty depends on the extent of that uncertainty. It also reflects the fact that investors would generally pay less for an asset (and generally require more for taking on a liability) that has uncertain cash flows than for an asset (or liability) whose cash flows are certain.
 - (e) other factors, for example, liquidity, if market participants would take those factors into account in the circumstances.
- 6.15 The factors mentioned in paragraphs 6.14(b) and 6.14(d) include the possibility that a counterparty may fail to fulfil its liability to the entity (credit risk), or that the entity may fail to fulfil its liability (own credit risk).
- 6.16 Because fair value is not derived, even in part, from the price of the transaction or other event that gave rise to the asset or liability, fair value is not increased by the transaction costs incurred when acquiring the asset and is not decreased by the transaction costs incurred when the liability is incurred or taken on. In addition, fair value does not reflect the transaction costs that would be incurred on the ultimate disposal of the asset or on transferring or settling the liability.

Value in use and fulfilment value

- 6.17 Value in use is the present value of the cash flows, or other economic benefits, that an entity expects to derive from the use of an asset and from its ultimate disposal. Fulfilment value is the present value of the cash, or other economic resources, that an entity expects to be obliged to transfer as it fulfils a liability. Those amounts of cash or other economic resources include not only the amounts to be transferred to the liability counterparty, but also the amounts that the entity expects to be obliged to transfer to other parties to enable it to fulfil the liability.
- 6.18 Because value in use and fulfilment value are based on future cash flows, they do not include transaction costs incurred on acquiring an asset or taking on a liability. However, value in use and fulfilment value include the present value of any transaction costs an entity expects to incur on the ultimate disposal of the asset or on fulfilling the liability.
- 6.19 Value in use and fulfilment value reflect entity-specific assumptions rather than assumptions by market participants. In practice, there may sometimes be little difference between the assumptions that market participants would use and those that an entity itself uses.
- 6.20 Value in use and fulfilment value cannot be observed directly and are determined using cash-flow-based measurement techniques (see paragraphs 6.91–6.95). Value in use and fulfilment value reflect the same factors described for fair value in paragraph 6.14, but from an entity-specific perspective rather than from a market-participant perspective.

Current cost

- 6.21 The current cost of an asset is the cost of an equivalent asset at the measurement date, comprising the consideration that would be paid at the measurement date plus the transaction costs that would be incurred at that date. The current cost of a liability is the consideration that would be received for an equivalent liability at the measurement date minus the transaction costs that would be incurred at that date. Current cost, like historical cost, is an entry value: it reflects prices in the market in which the entity would acquire the asset or would incur the liability. Hence, it is different from fair value, value in use and fulfilment value, which are exit values. However, unlike historical cost, current cost reflects conditions at the measurement date.
- 6.22 In some cases, current cost cannot be determined directly by observing prices in an active market and must be determined indirectly by other means. For example, if prices are available only for new assets, the current cost of a used asset might need to be estimated by adjusting the current price of a new asset to reflect the current age and condition of the asset held by the entity.

Information provided by particular measurement bases

- 6.23 When selecting a measurement basis, it is important to consider the nature of the information that the measurement basis will produce in both the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance. Table 6.1 summarises that information and paragraphs 6.24–6.42 provide additional discussion.

Historical cost

- 6.24 Information provided by measuring an asset or liability at historical cost may be relevant to users of financial statements, because historical cost uses information derived, at least in part, from the price of the transaction or other event that gave rise to the asset or liability.
- 6.25 Normally, if an entity acquired an asset in a recent transaction on market terms, the entity expects that the asset will provide sufficient economic benefits that the entity will at least recover the cost of the asset. Similarly, if a liability was incurred or taken on as a result of a recent transaction on market terms, the entity expects that the value of the obligation to transfer economic resources to fulfil the liability will normally be no more than the value of the consideration received minus transaction costs. Hence, measuring an asset or liability at historical cost in such cases provides relevant information about both the asset or liability and the price of the transaction that gave rise to that asset or liability.
- 6.26 Because historical cost is reduced to reflect consumption of an asset and its impairment, the amount expected to be recovered from an asset measured at historical cost is at least as great as its carrying amount. Similarly, because the historical cost of a liability is increased when it becomes onerous, the value of the obligation to transfer the economic resources needed to fulfil the liability is no more than the carrying amount of the liability.
- 6.27 If an asset other than a financial asset is measured at historical cost, consumption or sale of the asset, or of part of the asset, gives rise to an expense measured at the historical cost of the asset, or of part of the asset, consumed or sold.
- 6.28 The expense arising from the sale of an asset is recognised at the same time as the consideration for that sale is recognised as income. The difference between the income and the expense is the margin resulting from the sale. Expenses arising from consumption of an asset can be compared to related income to provide information about margins.
- 6.29 Similarly, if a liability other than a financial liability was incurred or taken on in exchange for consideration and is measured at historical cost, the fulfilment of all or part of the liability gives rise to income measured at the value of the consideration received for the part fulfilled. The difference between that income and the expenses incurred in fulfilling the liability is the margin resulting from the fulfilment.
- 6.30 Information about the cost of assets sold or consumed, including goods and services consumed immediately (see paragraph 4.8), and about the consideration received, may have predictive value. That information can be used as an input in predicting future margins from the future sale of goods (including goods not currently held by the entity) and services and hence to assess the entity's prospects for future net cash inflows. To assess an entity's prospects for future cash flows, users of financial statements often focus on the entity's prospects for generating future margins over many periods, not just on its prospects for generating margins from goods already held. Income and expenses measured at historical cost may also have confirmatory value because they may provide feedback to users of financial statements about their previous predictions of cash flows or of margins. Information about the cost of assets sold or consumed may also help in an assessment of how efficiently and effectively the entity's management has discharged its responsibilities to use the entity's economic resources.
- 6.31 For similar reasons, information about interest earned on assets, and interest incurred on liabilities, measured at amortised cost may have predictive and confirmatory value.

Current value

Fair value

- 6.32 Information provided by measuring assets and liabilities at fair value may have predictive value because fair value reflects market participants' current expectations about the amount, timing and uncertainty of future cash flows. These expectations are priced in a manner that reflects the current risk preferences of market participants. That information may also have confirmatory value by providing feedback about previous expectations.
- 6.33 Income and expenses reflecting market participants' current expectations may have some predictive value, because such income and expenses can be used as an input in predicting future income and expenses. Such income and expenses may also help in an assessment of how efficiently and effectively the entity's management has discharged its responsibilities to use the entity's economic resources.
- 6.34 A change in the fair value of an asset or liability can result from various factors identified in paragraph 6.14. When those factors have different characteristics, identifying separately income and expenses that result from those factors can provide useful information to users of financial statements (see paragraph 7.14(b)).
- 6.35 If an entity acquired an asset in one market and determines fair value using prices in a different market (the market in which the entity would sell the asset), any difference between the prices in those two markets is recognised as income when that fair value is first determined.
- 6.36 Sale of an asset or transfer of a liability would normally be for consideration of an amount similar to its fair value, if the transaction were to occur in the market that was the source for the prices used when measuring that fair value. In those cases, if the asset or liability is measured at fair value, the net income or net expenses arising at the time of the sale or transfer would usually be small, unless the effect of transaction costs is significant.

Value in use and fulfilment value

- 6.37 Value in use provides information about the present value of the estimated cash flows from the use of an asset and from its ultimate disposal. This information may have predictive value because it can be used in assessing the prospects for future net cash inflows.
- 6.38 Fulfilment value provides information about the present value of the estimated cash flows needed to fulfil a liability. Hence, fulfilment value may have predictive value, particularly if the liability will be fulfilled, rather than transferred or settled by negotiation.
- 6.39 Updated estimates of value in use or fulfilment value, combined with information about estimates of the amount, timing and uncertainty of future cash flows, may also have confirmatory value because they provide feedback about previous estimates of value in use or fulfilment value.

Current cost

- 6.40 Information about assets and liabilities measured at current cost may be relevant because current cost reflects the cost at which an equivalent asset could be acquired or created at the measurement date or the consideration that would be received for incurring or taking on an equivalent liability.
- 6.41 Like historical cost, current cost provides information about the cost of an asset consumed or about income from the fulfilment of liabilities. That information can be used to derive current margins and can be used as an input in predicting future margins. Unlike historical cost, current cost reflects prices prevailing at the time of consumption or fulfilment. When price changes are significant, margins based on current cost may be more useful for predicting future margins than margins based on historical cost.

- 6.42 To report the current cost of consumption (or current income from fulfilment), it is necessary to split the change in the carrying amount in the reporting period into the current cost of consumption (or current income from fulfilment), and the effect of changes in prices. The effect of a change in prices is sometimes referred to as a 'holding gain' or a 'holding loss'.

Table 6.1—Summary of information provided by particular measurement bases

Assets

Statement of financial position				
	Historical cost	Fair value (market-participant assumptions)	Value in use (entity-specific assumptions)^(a)	Current cost
Carrying amount	Historical cost (including transaction costs), to the extent unconsumed or uncollected, and recoverable. (Includes interest accrued on any financing component.)	Price that would be received to sell the asset (without deducting transaction costs on disposal).	Present value of future cash flows from the use of the asset and from its ultimate disposal (after deducting present value of transaction costs on disposal).	Current cost (including transaction costs), to the extent unconsumed or uncollected, and recoverable.
Statement(s) of financial performance				
Event	Historical cost	Fair value (market-participant assumptions)	Value in use (entity-specific assumptions)	Current cost
Initial recognition^(b)	—	Difference between consideration paid and fair value of the asset acquired. ^(c) Transaction costs on acquiring the asset.	Difference between consideration paid and value in use of the asset acquired. Transaction costs on acquiring the asset.	—
Sale or consumption of the asset^{(d), (e)}	Expenses equal to historical cost of the asset sold or consumed. Income received. (Could be presented gross or net.) Expenses for transaction costs on selling the asset.	Expenses equal to fair value of the asset sold or consumed. Income received. (Could be presented gross or net.) Expenses for transaction costs on selling the asset.	Expenses equal to value in use of the asset sold or consumed. Income received. (Could be presented gross or net.)	Expenses equal to current cost of the asset sold or consumed. Income received. (Could be presented gross or net.) Expenses for transaction costs on selling the asset.

continued...

...continued

Statement(s) of financial performance				
Interest income	Interest income, at historical rates, updated if the asset bears variable interest.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fair value. (Could be identified separately.)	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in value in use. (Could be identified separately.)	Interest income, at current rates.
Impairment	Expenses arising because historical cost is no longer recoverable.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fair value. (Could be identified separately.)	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in value in use. (Could be identified separately.)	Expenses arising because current cost is no longer recoverable.
Value changes	Not recognised, except to reflect an impairment. For financial assets—income and expenses from changes in estimated cash flows.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fair value.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in value in use.	Income and expenses reflecting the effect of changes in prices (holding gains and holding losses).
<p>(a) This column summarises the information provided if value in use is used as a measurement basis. However, as noted in paragraph 6.75, value in use may not be a practical measurement basis for regular remeasurements.</p> <p>(b) Income or expenses may arise on the initial recognition of an asset not acquired on market terms.</p> <p>(c) Income or expenses may arise if the market in which an asset is acquired is different from the market that is the source of the prices used when measuring the fair value of the asset.</p> <p>(d) Consumption of the asset is typically reported through cost of sales, depreciation or amortisation.</p> <p>(e) Income received is often equal to the consideration received but will depend on the measurement basis used for any related liability.</p>				

Liabilities

Statement of financial position				
	Historical cost	Fair value (market-participant assumptions)	Fulfilment value (entity-specific assumptions)	Current cost
Carrying amount	<p>Consideration received (net of transaction costs) for taking on the unfulfilled part of the liability, increased by excess of estimated cash outflows over consideration received.</p> <p>(Includes interest accrued on any financing component.)</p>	<p>Price that would be paid to transfer the unfulfilled part of the liability (not including transaction costs that would be incurred on transfer).</p>	<p>Present value of future cash flows that will arise in fulfilling the unfulfilled part of the liability (including present value of transaction costs to be incurred in fulfilment or transfer).</p>	<p>Consideration (net of transaction costs) that would be currently received for taking on the unfulfilled part of the liability, increased by excess of estimated cash outflows over that consideration.</p>
Statement(s) of financial performance				
Event	Historical cost	Fair value (market-participant assumptions)	Fulfilment value (entity-specific assumptions)	Current cost
Initial recognition^(a)	—	<p>Difference between consideration received and the fair value of the liability.^(b)</p> <p>Transaction costs on incurring or taking on the liability.</p>	<p>Difference between consideration received and the fulfilment value of the liability.</p> <p>Transaction costs on incurring or taking on the liability.</p>	—

continued...

...continued

Statement(s) of financial performance				
Event	Historical cost	Fair value (market-participant assumptions)	Fulfilment value (entity-specific assumptions)	Current cost
Fulfilment of the liability	<p>Income equal to historical cost of the liability fulfilled (reflects historical consideration).</p> <p>Expenses for costs incurred in fulfilling the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross.)</p>	<p>Income equal to fair value of the liability fulfilled.</p> <p>Expenses for costs incurred in fulfilling the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross. If gross, historical consideration could be presented separately.)</p>	<p>Income equal to fulfilment value of the liability fulfilled.</p> <p>Expenses for costs incurred in fulfilling the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross. If gross, historical consideration could be presented separately.)</p>	<p>Income equal to current cost of the liability fulfilled (reflects current consideration).</p> <p>Expenses for costs incurred in fulfilling the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross. If gross, historical consideration could be presented separately.)</p>
Transfer of the liability	<p>Income equal to historical cost of the liability transferred (reflects historical consideration).</p> <p>Expenses for costs paid (including transaction costs) to transfer the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross.)</p>	<p>Income equal to fair value of the liability transferred.</p> <p>Expenses for costs paid (including transaction costs) to transfer the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross.)</p>	<p>Income equal to fulfilment value of the liability transferred.</p> <p>Expenses for costs paid (including transaction costs) to transfer the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross.)</p>	<p>Income equal to current cost of the liability transferred (reflects current consideration).</p> <p>Expenses for costs paid (including transaction costs) to transfer the liability.</p> <p>(Could be presented net or gross.)</p>
Interest expenses	<p>Interest expenses, at historical rates, updated if the liability bears variable interest.</p>	<p>Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fair value.</p> <p>(Could be identified separately.)</p>	<p>Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fulfilment value.</p> <p>(Could be identified separately.)</p>	<p>Interest expenses, at current rates.</p>

continued...

...continued

Statement(s) of financial performance				
Effect of events that cause a liability to become onerous	Expenses equal to the excess of the estimated cash outflows over the historical cost of the liability, or a subsequent change in that excess.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fair value. (Could be identified separately.)	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fulfilment value. (Could be identified separately.)	Expenses equal to the excess of the estimated cash outflows over the current cost of the liability, or a subsequent change in that excess.
Value changes	Not recognised except to the extent that the liability is onerous. For financial liabilities—income and expenses from changes in estimated cash flows.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fair value.	Reflected in income and expenses from changes in fulfilment value.	Income and expenses reflecting the effect of changes in prices (holding gains and holding losses).
<p>(a) Income or expenses may arise on the initial recognition of a liability incurred or taken on not on market terms.</p> <p>(b) Income or expenses may arise if the market in which a liability is incurred or taken on is different from the market that is the source of the prices used when measuring the fair value of the liability.</p>				

Factors to consider when selecting a measurement basis

- 6.43 In selecting a measurement basis for an asset or liability and for the related income and expenses, it is necessary to consider the nature of the information that the measurement basis will produce in both the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance (see paragraphs 6.23–6.42 and Table 6.1), as well as other factors (see paragraphs 6.44–6.86).
- 6.44 In most cases, no single factor will determine which measurement basis should be selected. The relative importance of each factor will depend on facts and circumstances.
- 6.45 The information provided by a measurement basis must be useful to users of financial statements. To achieve this, the information must be relevant and it must faithfully represent what it purports to represent. In addition, the information provided should be, as far as possible, comparable, verifiable, timely and understandable.

- 6.46 As explained in paragraph 2.21, the most efficient and effective process for applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics would usually be to identify the most relevant information about an economic phenomenon. If that information is not available or cannot be provided in a way that faithfully represents the economic phenomenon, the next most relevant type of information is considered. Paragraphs 6.49–6.76 provide further discussion of the role played by the qualitative characteristics in the selection of a measurement basis.
- 6.47 The discussion in paragraphs 6.49–6.76 focuses on the factors to be considered in selecting a measurement basis for recognised assets and recognised liabilities. Some of that discussion may also apply in selecting a measurement basis for information provided in the notes, for recognised or unrecognised items.
- 6.48 Paragraphs 6.77–6.82 discuss additional factors to consider in selecting a measurement basis on initial recognition. If the initial measurement basis is inconsistent with the subsequent measurement basis, income and expenses might be recognised at the time of the first subsequent measurement solely because of the change in measurement basis. Recognising such income and expenses might appear to depict a transaction or other event when, in fact, no such transaction or event has occurred. Hence, the choice of measurement basis for an asset or liability, and for the related income and expenses, is determined by considering both initial measurement and subsequent measurement.

Relevance

- 6.49 The relevance of information provided by a measurement basis for an asset or liability and for the related income and expenses is affected by:
- (a) the characteristics of the asset or liability (see paragraphs 6.50–6.53); and
 - (b) how that asset or liability contributes to future cash flows (see paragraphs 6.54–6.57).

Characteristics of the asset or liability

- 6.50 The relevance of information provided by a measurement basis depends partly on the characteristics of the asset or liability, in particular, on the variability of cash flows and on whether the value of the asset or liability is sensitive to market factors or other risks.
- 6.51 If the value of an asset or liability is sensitive to market factors or other risks, its historical cost might differ significantly from its current value. Consequently, historical cost may not provide relevant information if information about changes in value is important to users of financial statements. For example, amortised cost cannot provide relevant information about a financial asset or financial liability that is a derivative.
- 6.52 Furthermore, if historical cost is used, changes in value are reported not when that value changes, but when an event such as disposal, impairment or fulfilment occurs. This could be incorrectly interpreted as implying that all the income and expenses recognised at the time of that event arose then, rather than over the periods during which the asset or liability was held. Moreover, because measurement at historical cost does not provide timely information about changes in value, income and expenses reported on that basis may lack predictive value and confirmatory value by not depicting the full effect of the entity's exposure to risk arising from holding the asset or liability during the reporting period.
- 6.53 Changes in the fair value of an asset or liability reflect changes in expectations of market participants and changes in their risk preferences. Depending on the characteristics of the asset or liability being measured and on the nature of the entity's business activities, information reflecting those changes may not always provide predictive value or confirmatory value to users of financial statements. This may be the case when the entity's business activities do not involve selling the asset or transferring the liability, for example, if the entity holds assets solely for use or solely for collecting contractual cash flows or if the entity is to fulfil liabilities itself.

Contribution to future cash flows

- 6.54 As noted in paragraph 1.14, some economic resources produce cash flows directly; in other cases, economic resources are used in combination to produce cash flows indirectly. How economic resources are used, and hence how assets and liabilities produce cash flows, depends in part on the nature of the business activities conducted by the entity.
- 6.55 When a business activity of an entity involves the use of several economic resources that produce cash flows indirectly, by being used in combination to produce and market goods or services to customers, historical cost or current cost is likely to provide relevant information about that activity. For example, property, plant and equipment is typically used in combination with an entity's other economic resources. Similarly, inventory typically cannot be sold to a customer, except by making extensive use of the entity's other economic resources (for example, in production and marketing activities). Paragraphs 6.24–6.31 and 6.40–6.42 explain how measuring such assets at historical cost or current cost can provide relevant information that can be used to derive margins achieved during the period.
- 6.56 For assets and liabilities that produce cash flows directly, such as assets that can be sold independently and without a significant economic penalty (for example, without significant business disruption), the measurement basis that provides the most relevant information is likely to be a current value that incorporates current estimates of the amount, timing and uncertainty of the future cash flows.
- 6.57 When a business activity of an entity involves managing financial assets and financial liabilities with the objective of collecting contractual cash flows, amortised cost may provide relevant information that can be used to derive the margin between the interest earned on the assets and the interest incurred on the liabilities. However, in assessing whether amortised cost will provide useful information, it is also necessary to consider the characteristics of the financial asset or financial liability. Amortised cost is unlikely to provide relevant information about cash flows that depend on factors other than principal and interest.

Faithful representation

- 6.58 When assets and liabilities are related in some way, using different measurement bases for those assets and liabilities can create a measurement inconsistency (accounting mismatch). If financial statements contain measurement inconsistencies, those financial statements may not faithfully represent some aspects of the entity's financial position and financial performance. Consequently, in some circumstances, using the same measurement basis for related assets and liabilities may provide users of financial statements with information that is more useful than the information that would result from using different measurement bases. This may be particularly likely when the cash flows from one asset or liability are directly linked to the cash flows from another asset or liability.
- 6.59 As noted in paragraphs 2.13 and 2.18, although a perfectly faithful representation is free from error, this does not mean that measures must be perfectly accurate in all respects.
- 6.60 When a measure cannot be determined directly by observing prices in an active market and must instead be estimated, measurement uncertainty arises. The level of measurement uncertainty associated with a particular measurement basis may affect whether information provided by that measurement basis provides a faithful representation of an entity's financial position and financial performance. A high level of measurement uncertainty does not necessarily prevent the use of a measurement basis that provides relevant information. However, in some cases the level of measurement uncertainty is so high that information provided by a measurement basis might not provide a sufficiently faithful representation (see paragraph 2.22). In such cases, it is appropriate to consider selecting a different measurement basis that would also result in relevant information.
- 6.61 Measurement uncertainty is different from both outcome uncertainty and existence uncertainty:

- (a) outcome uncertainty arises when there is uncertainty about the amount or timing of any inflow or outflow of economic benefits that will result from an asset or liability.
- (b) existence uncertainty arises when it is uncertain whether an asset or a liability exists. Paragraphs 5.12–5.14 discuss how existence uncertainty may affect decisions about whether an entity recognises an asset or liability when it is uncertain whether that asset or liability exists.

6.62 The presence of outcome uncertainty or existence uncertainty may sometimes contribute to measurement uncertainty. However, outcome uncertainty or existence uncertainty does not necessarily result in measurement uncertainty. For example, if the fair value of an asset can be determined directly by observing prices in an active market, no measurement uncertainty is associated with the measurement of that fair value, even if it is uncertain how much cash the asset will ultimately produce and hence there is outcome uncertainty.

Enhancing qualitative characteristics and the cost constraint

6.63 The enhancing qualitative characteristics of comparability, understandability and verifiability, and the cost constraint, have implications for the selection of a measurement basis. The following paragraphs discuss those implications. Paragraphs 6.69–6.76 discuss further implications specific to particular measurement bases. The enhancing qualitative characteristic of timeliness has no specific implications for measurement.

6.64 Just as cost constrains other financial reporting decisions, it also constrains the selection of a measurement basis. Hence, in selecting a measurement basis, it is important to consider whether the benefits of the information provided to users of financial statements by that measurement basis are likely to justify the costs of providing and using that information.

6.65 Consistently using the same measurement bases for the same items, either from period to period within a reporting entity or in a single period across entities, can help make financial statements more comparable.

6.66 A change in measurement basis can make financial statements less understandable. However, a change may be justified if other factors outweigh the reduction in understandability, for example, if the change results in more relevant information. If a change is made, users of financial statements may need explanatory information to enable them to understand the effect of that change.

6.67 Understandability depends partly on how many different measurement bases are used and on whether they change over time. In general, if more measurement bases are used in a set of financial statements, the resulting information becomes more complex and, hence, less understandable and the totals or subtotals in the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance become less informative. However, it could be appropriate to use more measurement bases if that is necessary to provide useful information.

6.68 Verifiability is enhanced by using measurement bases that result in measures that can be independently corroborated either directly, for example, by observing prices, or indirectly, for example, by checking inputs to a model. If a measure cannot be verified, users of financial statements may need explanatory information to enable them to understand how the measure was determined. In some such cases, it may be necessary to specify the use of a different measurement basis.

Historical cost

6.69 In many situations, it is simpler, and hence less costly, to measure historical cost than it is to measure a current value. In addition, measures determined applying a historical cost measurement basis are generally well understood and, in many cases, verifiable.

6.70 However, estimating consumption and identifying and measuring impairment losses or onerous liabilities can be subjective. Hence, the historical cost of an asset or liability can sometimes be as difficult to measure or verify as a current value.

- 6.71 Using a historical cost measurement basis, identical assets acquired, or liabilities incurred, at different times can be reported in the financial statements at different amounts. This can reduce comparability, both from period to period for a reporting entity and in a single period across entities.

Current value

- 6.72 Because fair value is determined from the perspective of market participants, not from an entity-specific perspective, and is independent of when the asset was acquired or the liability was incurred, identical assets or liabilities measured at fair value will, in principle, be measured at the same amount by entities that have access to the same markets. This can enhance comparability both from period to period for a reporting entity and in a single period across entities. In contrast, because value in use and fulfilment value reflect an entity-specific perspective, those measures could differ for identical assets or liabilities in different entities. Those differences may reduce comparability, particularly if the assets or liabilities contribute to cash flows in a similar manner.
- 6.73 If the fair value of an asset or liability can be determined directly by observing prices in an active market, the process of fair value measurement is low-cost, simple and easy to understand; and the fair value can be verified through direct observation.
- 6.74 Valuation techniques, sometimes including the use of cash-flow-based measurement techniques, may be needed to estimate fair value when it cannot be observed directly in an active market and are generally needed when determining value in use and fulfilment value. Depending on the techniques used:
- (a) estimating inputs to the valuation and applying the valuation technique may be costly and complex.
 - (b) the inputs into the process may be subjective and it may be difficult to verify both the inputs and the validity of the process itself. Consequently, the measures of identical assets or liabilities may differ. That would reduce comparability.
- 6.75 In many cases, value in use cannot be determined meaningfully for an individual asset used in combination with other assets. Instead, the value in use is determined for a group of assets and the result may then need to be allocated to individual assets. This process can be subjective and arbitrary. In addition, estimates of value in use for an asset may inadvertently reflect the effect of synergies with other assets in the group. Hence, determining the value in use of an asset used in combination with other assets can be a costly process and its complexity and subjectivity reduces verifiability. For these reasons, value in use may not be a practical measurement basis for regular remeasurements of such assets. However, it may be useful for occasional remeasurements of assets, for example, when it is used in an impairment test to determine whether historical cost is fully recoverable.
- 6.76 Using a current cost measurement basis, identical assets acquired or liabilities incurred at different times are reported in the financial statements at the same amount. This can enhance comparability, both from period to period for a reporting entity and in a single period across entities. However, determining current cost can be complex, subjective and costly. For example, as noted in paragraph 6.22, it may be necessary to estimate the current cost of an asset by adjusting the current price of a new asset to reflect the current age and condition of the asset held by the entity. In addition, because of changes in technology and changes in business practices, many assets would not be replaced with identical assets. Thus, a further subjective adjustment to the current price of a new asset would be required in order to estimate the current cost of an asset equivalent to the existing asset. Also, splitting changes in current cost carrying amounts between the current cost of consumption and the effect of changes in prices (see paragraph 6.42) may be complex and require arbitrary assumptions. Because of these difficulties, current cost measures may lack verifiability and understandability.

Factors specific to initial measurement

- 6.77 Paragraphs 6.43–6.76 discuss factors to consider when selecting a measurement basis, whether for initial recognition or subsequent measurement. Paragraphs 6.78–6.82 discuss some additional factors to consider at initial recognition.
- 6.78 At initial recognition, the cost of an asset acquired, or of a liability incurred, as a result of an event that is a transaction on market terms is normally similar to its fair value at that date, unless transaction costs are significant. Nevertheless, even if those two amounts are similar, it is necessary to describe what measurement basis is used at initial recognition. If historical cost will be used subsequently, that measurement basis is also normally appropriate at initial recognition. Similarly, if a current value will be used subsequently, it is also normally appropriate at initial recognition. Using the same measurement basis for initial recognition and subsequent measurement avoids recognising income or expenses at the time of the first subsequent measurement solely because of a change in measurement basis (see paragraph 6.48).
- 6.79 When an entity acquires an asset, or incurs a liability, in exchange for transferring another asset or liability as a result of a transaction on market terms, the initial measure of the asset acquired, or the liability incurred, determines whether any income or expenses arise from the transaction. When an asset or liability is measured at cost, no income or expenses arise at initial recognition, unless income or expenses arise from the derecognition of the transferred asset or liability, or unless the asset is impaired or the liability is onerous.
- 6.80 Assets may be acquired, or liabilities may be incurred, as a result of an event that is not a transaction on market terms. For example:
- (a) the transaction price may be affected by relationships between the parties, or by financial distress or other duress of one of the parties;
 - (b) an asset may be granted to the entity free of charge by a government or donated to the entity by another party;
 - (c) a liability may be imposed by legislation or regulation; or
 - (d) a liability to pay compensation or a penalty may arise from an act of wrongdoing.
- 6.81 In such cases, measuring the asset acquired, or the liability incurred, at its historical cost may not provide a faithful representation of the entity's assets and liabilities and of any income or expenses arising from the transaction or other event. Hence, it may be appropriate to measure the asset acquired, or the liability incurred, at deemed cost, as described in paragraph 6.6. Any difference between that deemed cost and any consideration given or received would be recognised as income or expenses at initial recognition.
- 6.82 When assets are acquired, or liabilities incurred, as a result of an event that is not a transaction on market terms, all relevant aspects of the transaction or other event need to be identified and considered. For example, it may be necessary to recognise other assets, other liabilities, contributions from holders of equity claims or distributions to holders of equity claims to faithfully represent the substance of the effect of the transaction or other event on the entity's financial position (see paragraphs 4.59–4.62) and any related effect on the entity's financial performance.

More than one measurement basis

- 6.83 Sometimes, consideration of the factors described in paragraphs 6.43–6.76 may lead to the conclusion that more than one measurement basis is needed for an asset or liability and for related income and expenses in order to provide relevant information that faithfully represents both the entity's financial position and its financial performance.
- 6.84 In most cases, the most understandable way to provide that information is:
- (a) to use a single measurement basis both for the asset or liability in the statement of financial position and for related income and expenses in the statement(s) of financial performance; and

- (b) to provide in the notes additional information applying a different measurement basis.
- 6.85 However, in some cases, that information is more relevant, or results in a more faithful representation of both the entity's financial position and its financial performance, through the use of:
- (a) a current value measurement basis for the asset or liability in the statement of financial position; and
 - (b) a different measurement basis for the related income and expenses in the statement of profit or loss¹⁰ (see paragraphs 7.17–7.18).
- In selecting those measurement bases, it is necessary to consider the factors discussed in paragraphs 6.43–6.76.
- 6.86 In such cases, the total income or total expenses arising in the period from the change in the current value of the asset or liability is separated and classified (see paragraphs 7.14–7.19) so that:
- (a) the statement of profit or loss includes the income or expenses measured applying the measurement basis selected for that statement; and
 - (b) other comprehensive income includes all the remaining income or expenses. As a result, the accumulated other comprehensive income related to that asset or liability equals the difference between:
 - (i) the carrying amount of the asset or liability in the statement of financial position; and
 - (ii) the carrying amount that would have been determined applying the measurement basis selected for the statement of profit or loss.

Measurement of equity

- 6.87 The total carrying amount of equity (total equity) is not measured directly. It equals the total of the carrying amounts of all recognised assets less the total of the carrying amounts of all recognised liabilities.
- 6.88 Because general purpose financial statements are not designed to show an entity's value, the total carrying amount of equity will not generally equal:
- (a) the aggregate market value of equity claims on the entity;
 - (b) the amount that could be raised by selling the entity as a whole on a going concern basis; or
 - (c) the amount that could be raised by selling all of the entity's assets and settling all of its liabilities.
- 6.89 Although total equity is not measured directly, it may be appropriate to measure directly the carrying amount of some individual classes of equity (see paragraph 4.65) and some components of equity (see paragraph 4.66). Nevertheless, because total equity is measured as a residual, at least one class of equity cannot be measured directly. Similarly, at least one component of equity cannot be measured directly.
- 6.90 The total carrying amount of an individual class of equity or component of equity is normally positive, but can be negative in some circumstances. Similarly, total equity is generally positive, but it can be negative, depending on which assets and liabilities are recognised and on how they are measured.

10 The *Conceptual Framework* does not specify whether the statement(s) of financial performance comprise(s) a single statement or two statements. The *Conceptual Framework* uses the term 'statement of profit or loss' to refer both to a separate statement and to a separate section within a single statement of financial performance.

Cash-flow-based measurement techniques

- 6.91 Sometimes, a measure cannot be observed directly. In some such cases, one way to estimate the measure is by using cash-flow-based measurement techniques. Such techniques are not measurement bases. They are techniques used in applying a measurement basis. Hence, when using such a technique, it is necessary to identify which measurement basis is used and the extent to which the technique reflects the factors applicable to that measurement basis. For example, if the measurement basis is fair value, the applicable factors are those described in paragraph 6.14.
- 6.92 Cash-flow-based measurement techniques can be used in applying a modified measurement basis, for example, fulfilment value modified to exclude the effect of the possibility that the entity may fail to fulfil a liability (own credit risk). Modifying measurement bases may sometimes result in information that is more relevant to the users of financial statements or that may be less costly to produce or to understand. However, modified measurement bases may also be more difficult for users of financial statements to understand.
- 6.93 Outcome uncertainty (see paragraph 6.61(a)) arises from uncertainties about the amount or timing of future cash flows. Those uncertainties are important characteristics of assets and liabilities. When measuring an asset or liability by reference to estimates of uncertain future cash flows, one factor to consider is possible variations in the estimated amount or timing of those cash flows (see paragraph 6.14(b)). Those variations are considered in selecting a single amount from within the range of possible cash flows. The amount selected is itself sometimes the amount of a possible outcome, but this is not always the case. The amount that provides the most relevant information is usually one from within the central part of the range (a central estimate). Different central estimates provide different information. For example:
- (a) the expected value (the probability-weighted average, also known as the statistical mean) reflects the entire range of outcomes and gives more weight to the outcomes that are more likely. The expected value is not intended to predict the ultimate inflow or outflow of cash or other economic benefits arising from that asset or liability.
 - (b) the maximum amount that is more likely than not to occur (similar to the statistical median) indicates that the probability of a subsequent loss is no more than 50% and that the probability of a subsequent gain is no more than 50%.
 - (c) the most likely outcome (the statistical mode) is the single most likely ultimate inflow or outflow arising from an asset or liability.
- 6.94 A central estimate depends on estimates of future cash flows and possible variations in their amounts or timing. It does not capture the price for bearing the uncertainty that the ultimate outcome may differ from that central estimate (that is, the factor described in paragraph 6.14(d)).
- 6.95 No central estimate gives complete information about the range of possible outcomes. Hence users may need information about the range of possible outcomes.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 7—PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE	
PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE AS COMMUNICATION TOOLS	7.1
PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE OBJECTIVES AND PRINCIPLES	7.4
CLASSIFICATION	7.7
Classification of assets and liabilities	7.9
Offsetting	7.10
Classification of equity	7.12
Classification of income and expenses	7.14
Profit or loss and other comprehensive income	7.15
AGGREGATION	7.20

Presentation and disclosure as communication tools

- 7.1 A reporting entity communicates information about its assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses by presenting and disclosing information in its financial statements.
- 7.2 Effective communication of information in financial statements makes that information more relevant and contributes to a faithful representation of an entity's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses. It also enhances the understandability and comparability of information in financial statements. Effective communication of information in financial statements requires:
- (a) focusing on presentation and disclosure objectives and principles rather than focusing on rules;
 - (b) classifying information in a manner that groups similar items and separates dissimilar items; and
 - (c) aggregating information in such a way that it is not obscured either by unnecessary detail or by excessive aggregation.
- 7.3 Just as cost constrains other financial reporting decisions, it also constrains decisions about presentation and disclosure. Hence, in making decisions about presentation and disclosure, it is important to consider whether the benefits provided to users of financial statements by presenting or disclosing particular information are likely to justify the costs of providing and using that information.

Presentation and disclosure objectives and principles

- 7.4 To facilitate effective communication of information in financial statements, when developing presentation and disclosure requirements in Standards a balance is needed between:
- (a) giving entities the flexibility to provide relevant information that faithfully represents the entity's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses; and
 - (b) requiring information that is comparable, both from period to period for a reporting entity and in a single reporting period across entities.
- 7.5 Including presentation and disclosure objectives in Standards supports effective communication in financial statements because such objectives help entities to identify useful information and to decide how to communicate that information in the most effective manner.
- 7.6 Effective communication in financial statements is also supported by considering the following principles:
- (a) entity-specific information is more useful than standardised descriptions, sometimes referred to as 'boilerplate'; and
 - (b) duplication of information in different parts of the financial statements is usually unnecessary and can make financial statements less understandable.

Classification

- 7.7 Classification is the sorting of assets, liabilities, equity, income or expenses on the basis of shared characteristics for presentation and disclosure purposes. Such characteristics include—but are not limited to—the nature of the item, its role (or function) within the business activities conducted by the entity, and how it is measured.
- 7.8 Classifying dissimilar assets, liabilities, equity, income or expenses together can obscure relevant information, reduce understandability and comparability and may not provide a faithful representation of what it purports to represent.

Classification of assets and liabilities

- 7.9 Classification is applied to the unit of account selected for an asset or liability (see paragraphs 4.48–4.55). However, it may sometimes be appropriate to separate an asset or liability into components that have different characteristics and to classify those components separately. That would be appropriate when classifying those components separately would enhance the usefulness of the resulting financial information. For example, it could be appropriate to separate an asset or liability into current and non-current components and to classify those components separately.

Offsetting

- 7.10 Offsetting occurs when an entity recognises and measures both an asset and liability as separate units of account, but groups them into a single net amount in the statement of financial position. Offsetting classifies dissimilar items together and therefore is generally not appropriate.
- 7.11 Offsetting assets and liabilities differs from treating a set of rights and obligations as a single unit of account (see paragraphs 4.48–4.55).

Classification of equity

- 7.12 To provide useful information, it may be necessary to classify equity claims separately if those equity claims have different characteristics (see paragraph 4.65).
- 7.13 Similarly, to provide useful information, it may be necessary to classify components of equity separately if some of those components are subject to particular legal, regulatory or other requirements. For example, in some jurisdictions, an entity is permitted to make distributions to holders of equity claims only if the entity has sufficient reserves specified as distributable (see paragraph 4.66). Separate presentation or disclosure of those reserves may provide useful information.

Classification of income and expenses

- 7.14 Classification is applied to:
- (a) income and expenses resulting from the unit of account selected for an asset or liability; or
 - (b) components of such income and expenses if those components have different characteristics and are identified separately. For example, a change in the current value of an asset can include the effects of value changes and the accrual of interest (see Table 6.1). It would be appropriate to classify those components separately if doing so would enhance the usefulness of the resulting financial information.

Profit or loss and other comprehensive income

- 7.15 Income and expenses are classified and included either:
- (a) in the statement of profit or loss;¹¹ or
 - (b) outside the statement of profit or loss, in other comprehensive income.

11 The *Conceptual Framework* does not specify whether the statement(s) of financial performance comprise(s) a single statement or two statements. The *Conceptual Framework* uses the term 'statement of profit or loss' to refer to a separate statement and to a separate section within a single statement of financial performance. Likewise, it uses the term 'total for profit or loss' to refer both to a total for a separate statement and to a subtotal for a section within a single statement of financial performance.

- 7.16 The statement of profit or loss is the primary source of information about an entity's financial performance for the reporting period. That statement contains a total for profit or loss that provides a highly summarised depiction of the entity's financial performance for the period. Many users of financial statements incorporate that total in their analysis either as a starting point for that analysis or as the main indicator of the entity's financial performance for the period. Nevertheless, understanding an entity's financial performance for the period requires an analysis of all recognised income and expenses—including income and expenses included in other comprehensive income—as well as an analysis of other information included in the financial statements.
- 7.17 Because the statement of profit or loss is the primary source of information about an entity's financial performance for the period, all income and expenses are, in principle, included in that statement. However, in developing Standards and Accounting Guidelines, the HKICPA may decide in exceptional circumstances that income or expenses arising from a change in the current value of an asset or liability are to be included in other comprehensive income when doing so would result in the statement of profit or loss providing more relevant information, or providing a more faithful representation of the entity's financial performance for that period.
- 7.18 Income and expenses that arise on a historical cost measurement basis (see Table 6.1) are included in the statement of profit or loss. That is also the case when income and expenses of that type are separately identified as a component of a change in the current value of an asset or liability. For example, if a financial asset is measured at current value and if interest income is identified separately from other changes in value, that interest income is included in the statement of profit or loss.
- 7.19 In principle, income and expenses included in other comprehensive income in one period are reclassified from other comprehensive income into the statement of profit or loss in a future period when doing so results in the statement of profit or loss providing more relevant information, or providing a more faithful representation of the entity's financial performance for that future period. However, if, for example, there is no clear basis for identifying the period in which reclassification would have that result, or the amount that should be reclassified, the HKICPA may, in developing Standards and Accounting Guidelines, decide that income and expenses included in other comprehensive income are not to be subsequently reclassified.

Aggregation

- 7.20 Aggregation is the adding together of assets, liabilities, equity, income or expenses that have shared characteristics and are included in the same classification.
- 7.21 Aggregation makes information more useful by summarising a large volume of detail. However, aggregation conceals some of that detail. Hence, a balance needs to be found so that relevant information is not obscured either by a large amount of insignificant detail or by excessive aggregation.
- 7.22 Different levels of aggregation may be needed in different parts of the financial statements. For example, typically, the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance provide summarised information and more detailed information is provided in the notes.

from paragraph

**CHAPTER 8—CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL AND CAPITAL
MAINTENANCE**

CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL	8.1
CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL MAINTENANCE AND THE DETERMINATION OF PROFIT	8.3
CAPITAL MAINTENANCE ADJUSTMENTS	8.10

The material included in Chapter 8 has been carried forward unchanged from the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2010.

Concepts of capital

- 8.1 A financial concept of capital is adopted by most entities in preparing their financial statements. Under a financial concept of capital, such as invested money or invested purchasing power, capital is synonymous with the net assets or equity of the entity. Under a physical concept of capital, such as operating capability, capital is regarded as the productive capacity of the entity based on, for example, units of output per day.
- 8.2 The selection of the appropriate concept of capital by an entity should be based on the needs of the users of its financial statements. Thus, a financial concept of capital should be adopted if the users of financial statements are primarily concerned with the maintenance of nominal invested capital or the purchasing power of invested capital. If, however, the main concern of users is with the operating capability of the entity, a physical concept of capital should be used. The concept chosen indicates the goal to be attained in determining profit, even though there may be some measurement difficulties in making the concept operational.

Concepts of capital maintenance and the determination of profit

- 8.3 The concepts of capital in paragraph 8.1 give rise to the following concepts of capital maintenance:
- (a) *Financial capital maintenance.* Under this concept a profit is earned only if the financial (or money) amount of the net assets at the end of the period exceeds the financial (or money) amount of net assets at the beginning of the period, after excluding any distributions to, and contributions from, owners during the period. Financial capital maintenance can be measured in either nominal monetary units or units of constant purchasing power.
 - (b) *Physical capital maintenance.* Under this concept a profit is earned only if the physical productive capacity (or operating capability) of the entity (or the resources or funds needed to achieve that capacity) at the end of the period exceeds the physical productive capacity at the beginning of the period, after excluding any distributions to, and contributions from, owners during the period.
- 8.4 The concept of capital maintenance is concerned with how an entity defines the capital that it seeks to maintain. It provides the linkage between the concepts of capital and the concepts of profit because it provides the point of reference by which profit is measured; it is a prerequisite for distinguishing between an entity's return on capital and its return of capital; only inflows of assets in excess of amounts needed to maintain capital may be regarded as profit and therefore as a return on capital. Hence, profit is the residual amount that remains after expenses (including capital maintenance adjustments, where appropriate) have been deducted from income. If expenses exceed income the residual amount is a loss.
- 8.5 The physical capital maintenance concept requires the adoption of the current cost basis of measurement. The financial capital maintenance concept, however, does not require the use of a particular basis of measurement. Selection of the basis under this concept is dependent on the type of financial capital that the entity is seeking to maintain.
- 8.6 The principal difference between the two concepts of capital maintenance is the treatment of the effects of changes in the prices of assets and liabilities of the entity. In general terms, an entity has maintained its capital if it has as much capital at the end of the period as it had at the beginning of the period. Any amount over and above that required to maintain the capital at the beginning of the period is profit.

- 8.7 Under the concept of financial capital maintenance where capital is defined in terms of nominal monetary units, profit represents the increase in nominal money capital over the period. Thus, increases in the prices of assets held over the period, conventionally referred to as holding gains, are, conceptually, profits. They may not be recognised as such, however, until the assets are disposed of in an exchange transaction. When the concept of financial capital maintenance is defined in terms of constant purchasing power units, profit represents the increase in invested purchasing power over the period. Thus, only that part of the increase in the prices of assets that exceeds the increase in the general level of prices is regarded as profit. The rest of the increase is treated as a capital maintenance adjustment and, hence, as part of equity.
- 8.8 Under the concept of physical capital maintenance when capital is defined in terms of the physical productive capacity, profit represents the increase in that capital over the period. All price changes affecting the assets and liabilities of the entity are viewed as changes in the measurement of the physical productive capacity of the entity; hence, they are treated as capital maintenance adjustments that are part of equity and not as profit.
- 8.9 The selection of the measurement bases and concept of capital maintenance will determine the accounting model used in the preparation of the financial statements. Different accounting models exhibit different degrees of relevance and reliability and, as in other areas, management must seek a balance between relevance and reliability. This *Conceptual Framework* is applicable to a range of accounting models and provides guidance on preparing and presenting the financial statements constructed under the chosen model. At the present time, it is not the intention of the HKICPA to prescribe a particular model other than in exceptional circumstances, such as for those entities reporting in the currency of a hyperinflationary economy. This intention will, however, be reviewed in the light of world developments.

Capital maintenance adjustments

- 8.10 The revaluation or restatement of assets and liabilities gives rise to increases or decreases in equity. While these increases or decreases meet the definition of income and expenses, they are not included in the income statement under certain concepts of capital maintenance. Instead these items are included in equity as capital maintenance adjustments or revaluation reserves.

Appendix 1

Defined terms

The following defined terms are extracted or derived from the relevant paragraphs of the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

aggregation	The adding together of assets, liabilities, equity, income or expenses that have shared characteristics and are included in the same classification.	CF.7.20
asset	A present economic resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events.	CF.4.3
carrying amount	The amount at which an asset, a liability or equity is recognised in the statement of financial position.	CF.5.1
classification	The sorting of assets, liabilities, equity, income or expenses on the basis of shared characteristics for presentation and disclosure purposes.	CF.7.7
combined financial statements	Financial statements of a reporting entity that comprises two or more entities that are not all linked by a parent-subsiary relationship.	CF.3.12
consolidated financial statements	Financial statements of a reporting entity that comprises both the parent and its subsidiaries.	CF.3.11
control of an economic resource	The present ability to direct the use of the economic resource and obtain the economic benefits that may flow from it.	CF.4.20
derecognition	The removal of all or part of a recognised asset or liability from an entity's statement of financial position.	CF.5.26
economic resource	A right that has the potential to produce economic benefits.	CF.4.4
enhancing qualitative characteristic	A qualitative characteristic that makes useful information more useful. The enhancing qualitative characteristics are comparability, verifiability, timeliness and understandability.	CF.2.4, CF.2.23
equity	The residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities.	CF.4.63
equity claim	A claim on the residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities.	CF.4.64
executory contract	A contract, or a portion of a contract, that is equally unperformed—neither party has fulfilled any of its obligations, or both parties have partially fulfilled their obligations to an equal extent.	CF.4.56

continued...

...continued

existence uncertainty	Uncertainty about whether an asset or liability exists.	CF.4.13, CF.4.35
expenses	Decreases in assets, or increases in liabilities, that result in decreases in equity, other than those relating to distributions to holders of equity claims.	CF.4.69
fundamental qualitative characteristic	A qualitative characteristic that financial information must possess to be useful to the primary users of general purpose financial reports. The fundamental qualitative characteristics are relevance and faithful representation.	CF.2.4, CF.2.5
general purpose financial report	A report that provides financial information about the reporting entity's economic resources, claims against the entity and changes in those economic resources and claims that is useful to primary users in making decisions relating to providing resources to the entity.	CF.1.2, CF.1.12
general purpose financial statements	A particular form of general purpose financial reports that provide information about the reporting entity's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses.	CF.3.2
income	Increases in assets, or decreases in liabilities, that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from holders of equity claims.	CF.4.68
liability	A present obligation of the entity to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events.	CF.4.26
material information	Information whose omission or misstatement could influence decisions that the primary users of general purpose financial reports make on the basis of those reports, which provide financial information about a specific reporting entity.	CF.2.11
measure	The result of applying a measurement basis to an asset or liability and related income and expenses.	CF.6.1
measurement basis	An identified feature—for example, historical cost, fair value or fulfilment value—of an item being measured.	CF.6.1
measurement uncertainty	Uncertainty that arises when monetary amounts in financial reports cannot be observed directly and must instead be estimated.	CF.2.19
offsetting	Grouping an asset and liability that are recognised and measured as separate units of account into a single net amount in the statement of financial position.	CF.7.10
outcome uncertainty	Uncertainty about the amount or timing of any inflow or outflow of economic benefits that will result from an asset or liability.	CF.6.61

continued...

...continued

potential to produce economic benefits	Within an economic resource, a feature that already exists and that, in at least one circumstance, would produce for the entity economic benefits beyond those available to all other parties.	CF.4.14
primary users (of general purpose financial reports)	Existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors.	CF.1.2
prudence	The exercise of caution when making judgements under conditions of uncertainty. The exercise of prudence means that assets and income are not overstated and liabilities and expenses are not understated. Equally, the exercise of prudence does not allow for the understatement of assets or income or the overstatement of liabilities or expenses.	CF.2.16
recognition	The process of capturing for inclusion in the statement of financial position or the statement(s) of financial performance an item that meets the definition of one of the elements of financial statements—an asset, a liability, equity, income or expenses. Recognition involves depicting the item in one of those statements—either alone or in aggregation with other items—in words and by a monetary amount, and including that amount in one or more totals in that statement.	CF.5.1
reporting entity	An entity that is required, or chooses, to prepare general purpose financial statements.	CF.3.10
unconsolidated financial statements	Financial statements of a reporting entity that is the parent alone.	CF.3.11
unit of account	The right or the group of rights, the obligation or the group of obligations, or the group of rights and obligations, to which recognition criteria and measurement concepts are applied.	CF.4.48
useful financial information	Financial information that is useful to primary users of general purpose financial reports in making decisions relating to providing resources to the reporting entity. To be useful, financial information must be relevant and faithfully represent what it purports to represent.	CF.1.2, CF.2.4
users (of general purpose financial reports)	See primary users (of general purpose financial reports).	–

Appendix 2 Comparison of the Hong Kong *Conceptual Framework* with the IASB *Conceptual Framework*

This comparison appendix, which deals only with significant differences between the HKICPA's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* ('the Hong Kong *Conceptual Framework*') and the IASB's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* ('the IASB *Conceptual Framework*'), is produced for information only and does not form part of the Hong Kong *Conceptual Framework*.

The following sets out the textual differences between the Hong Kong *Conceptual Framework* and the IASB *Conceptual Framework* and the reasons for such differences.

Differences	Reasons for the differences
<p>1. <u>IASB <i>Conceptual Framework</i> 'Status and purpose'</u> <u>Hong Kong <i>Conceptual Framework</i> 'Status and purpose'</u></p> <p>The IASB <i>Conceptual Framework</i> 'Status and purpose' states that the <i>Conceptual Framework</i> contributes to the stated mission of the IFRS Foundation and of the Board, which is part of the IFRS Foundation. That mission is to develop Standards that bring transparency, accountability and efficiency to financial markets around the world. The Board's work serves the public interest by fostering trust, growth and long term financial stability in the global economy.</p> <p>The corresponding paragraph in the Hong Kong <i>Conceptual Framework</i> does not contain such statements.</p>	<p>Those statements are applicable to the IASB as an international standard-setting body but not to the HKICPA.</p>
<p>2. <u>IASB <i>Conceptual Framework</i> 'Status and purpose' and paragraphs 1.8, 2.42, 7.17 and 7.19</u> <u>Hong Kong <i>Conceptual Framework</i> 'Status and purpose' and paragraphs 1.8, 2.42, 7.17 and 7.19</u></p> <p>The Hong Kong <i>Conceptual Framework</i> contains references to 'Accounting Guidelines'. The IASB <i>Conceptual Framework</i> does not contain such references.</p>	<p>The <i>Preface to Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards</i> provides that the HKICPA may issue Accounting Guidelines.</p>

Conceptual Framework (Revised)
Basis for Conclusions
Issued June 2018

Basis for Conclusions

Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2018



Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

COPYRIGHT

© Copyright 2018 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Framework contains the IFRS Foundation copyright material. Reproduction within Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Hong Kong should be addressed to the Director, Finance and Operations, Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

All rights in this material outside of Hong Kong are reserved by IFRS Foundation. Reproduction of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards outside of Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only. Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce for commercial purposes outside Hong Kong should be addressed to the IFRS Foundation at www.ifrs.org.

Further details of the IFRS Foundation copyright notice is available at <http://app1.hkicpa.org.hk/ebook/copyright-notice.pdf>

Basis for Conclusions on *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*

The HKICPA's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* is based on the IASB's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. In approving the HKICPA's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, the Financial Reporting Standards Committee of the HKICPA considered and agreed with the IASB's Basis for Conclusions on *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. Accordingly, there are no significant differences between the HKICPA's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* and the IASB's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. The IASB's Basis for Conclusions is reproduced below. The paragraph numbers of the IASB's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* referred to below generally correspond with those in HKICPA's *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

CONTENTS

from paragraph

STATUS AND PURPOSE OF THE *CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK*

HISTORY OF THE PROJECT	BC0.1
PURPOSE	BC0.18
STATUS	BC0.21
TRANSITION TO THE 2018 <i>CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK</i>	BC0.27
BUSINESS ACTIVITIES	BC0.29
IMPLICATIONS OF LONG-TERM INVESTMENT	BC0.34
CHAPTER 1—THE OBJECTIVE OF GENERAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL REPORTING	
INTRODUCTION	BC1.1
PRIMARY USERS	BC1.9
USEFULNESS FOR MAKING DECISIONS	BC1.27
INFORMATION ABOUT A REPORTING ENTITY'S ECONOMIC RESOURCES, CLAIMS AGAINST THE ENTITY AND CHANGES IN RESOURCES AND CLAIMS	BC1.44
CHAPTER 2—QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION	
INTRODUCTION	BC2.1
THE OBJECTIVE OF FINANCIAL REPORTING AND THE QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION	BC2.5
FUNDAMENTAL AND ENHANCING QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS	BC2.9
FUNDAMENTAL QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS	BC2.12
ENHANCING QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS	BC2.58
QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS NOT INCLUDED	BC2.70
THE COST CONSTRAINT ON USEFUL FINANCIAL REPORTING	BC2.73

CHAPTER 3—FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND THE REPORTING ENTITY	
FOCUS ON FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	BC3.1
OBJECTIVE AND SCOPE OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	BC3.3
PERSPECTIVE ADOPTED IN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	BC3.9
GOING CONCERN ASSUMPTION	BC3.11
THE REPORTING ENTITY	BC3.12
CHAPTER 4—THE ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	
INTRODUCTION	BC4.1
DEFINITIONS—ISSUES COMMON TO BOTH ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	BC4.3
DEFINITION OF AN ASSET	BC4.23
DEFINITION OF A LIABILITY	BC4.44
ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	BC4.69
DEFINITION OF EQUITY	BC4.89
DEFINITIONS OF INCOME AND EXPENSES	BC4.93
OTHER POSSIBLE DEFINITIONS	BC4.97
CHAPTER 5—RECOGNITION AND DERECOGNITION	
RECOGNITION	BC5.1
DERECOGNITION	BC5.23
CHAPTER 6—MEASUREMENT	
INTRODUCTION	BC6.1
MIXED MEASUREMENT	BC6.5
MEASUREMENT BASES AND THE INFORMATION THEY PROVIDE	BC6.12
FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN SELECTING A MEASUREMENT BASIS	BC6.34
MEASUREMENT OF EQUITY	BC6.52
CHAPTER 7—PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE	
INTRODUCTION	BC7.1
CLASSIFICATION OF EQUITY	BC7.4
CLASSIFICATION OF INCOME AND EXPENSES	BC7.6
CHAPTER 8—CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL AND CAPITAL MAINTENANCE	BC8.1

Basis for Conclusions on the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework). It summarises the considerations of the International Accounting Standards Board (Board) in developing the Conceptual Framework. Individual Board members gave greater weight to some factors than to others.

from paragraph

STATUS AND PURPOSE OF THE *CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK*

HISTORY OF THE PROJECT	BC0.1
Revision in 2018—approach and scope	BC0.10
PURPOSE	BC0.18
STATUS	BC0.21
TRANSITION TO THE 2018 <i>CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK</i>	BC0.27
BUSINESS ACTIVITIES	BC0.29
IMPLICATIONS OF LONG-TERM INVESTMENT	BC0.34
Long-term investment as a business activity	BC0.37
Information needs of long-term investors	BC0.40

History of the project

- BC0.1 In 1989, the Board's predecessor body, the International Accounting Standards Committee, issued the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* (1989 *Framework*).
- BC0.2 In 2004, the Board and the US national standard-setter, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), started a joint project to revise their conceptual frameworks.
- BC0.3 The first phase of the project was to develop chapters that describe the objective of general purpose financial reporting and the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information. In developing these chapters, the Board and the FASB published a Discussion Paper in 2006 (2006 Discussion Paper) and an Exposure Draft in 2008 (2008 Exposure Draft).¹ After considering feedback on those documents and information gained from outreach, in 2010 the Board and the FASB issued two chapters of a revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (2010 *Conceptual Framework*). The chapters on the objective of general purpose financial reporting and qualitative characteristics of useful financial information came into effect as soon as they were issued. The remaining text of the 1989 *Framework* was carried forward to the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* unchanged.
- BC0.4 In addition to finalising the chapters on the objective of general purpose financial reporting and qualitative characteristics of useful financial information, the Board and the FASB:
- (a) published a Discussion Paper and then an Exposure Draft (2010 Exposure Draft) on the concept of a reporting entity;²
 - (b) discussed the definitions of the elements of financial statements; and
 - (c) discussed and held public round-table meetings about measurement.
- BC0.5 This work did not lead to further revisions at that time because in 2010 the Board and the FASB suspended work on the *Conceptual Framework* to concentrate on other projects.
- BC0.6 In 2011, the Board carried out a public consultation on its agenda. Most respondents to that consultation identified the Conceptual Framework as a priority project for the Board. Consequently, in 2012 the Board restarted its Conceptual Framework project.
- BC0.7 Before 2010, the Board and the FASB had planned to complete the project in eight separate phases, but completed only one phase—on objectives and qualitative characteristics. On restarting the project in 2012, the Board decided to develop a complete set of proposals for a revised *Conceptual Framework* instead of continuing with the phased approach. Developing the *Conceptual Framework* as a whole enabled the Board and stakeholders to see more clearly the links between different aspects of the *Conceptual Framework*.
- BC0.8 In developing the revised *Conceptual Framework*, the Board published a Discussion Paper in 2013 (2013 Discussion Paper) and an Exposure Draft in 2015 (2015 Exposure Draft).³ After considering feedback on these documents and information gained from outreach, in 2018 the Board completed its Conceptual Framework project when it issued the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (2018 *Conceptual Framework*).
- BC0.9 The work since restarting the project in 2012 was not conducted jointly with the FASB. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* includes limited changes to the chapters on the objective of general purpose financial reporting and qualitative characteristics of useful financial information. The FASB did not make corresponding changes to its Statements of Financial Accounting Concepts.

1 See the Discussion Paper *Preliminary Views on an Improved Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting: The Objective of Financial Reporting and Qualitative Characteristics of Decision-useful Financial Reporting Information* published in 2006 and the Exposure Draft *An Improved Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting: Chapters 1 and 2* published in 2008.

2 See the Discussion Paper *Preliminary Views on an Improved Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting—The Reporting Entity* published in 2008 and the Exposure Draft *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting—The Reporting Entity* published in 2010.

3 See the Discussion Paper *A Review of the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* published in 2013 and the Exposure Draft *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* published in 2015.

Revision in 2018—approach and scope

- BC0.10 Although the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* had helped the Board when developing IFRS Standards (Standards):
- (a) some important areas were not covered;
 - (b) the guidance in some areas was unclear; and
 - (c) some aspects were out of date.
- BC0.11 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board built on the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*—filling in gaps, as well as clarifying and updating it, but not fundamentally reconsidering all aspects of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. In particular, although the Board reconsidered some aspects of chapters on the objective of financial reporting and qualitative characteristics of useful financial information, it did not reconsider those chapters fundamentally. In selecting that approach, the Board noted that these chapters went through extensive due process during the development of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*.
- BC0.12 The Board normally establishes a consultative group for major projects. For the Conceptual Framework project, the Board used the Accounting Standards Advisory Forum (ASAF) as its consultative group. The ASAF is an advisory group to the Board. It comprises national accounting standard-setters and regional bodies with an interest in financial reporting. The Board discussed a range of topics with the ASAF during the development of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.
- BC0.13 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board sought a balance between providing high-level concepts and providing enough detail for the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to be useful to the Board and others. Some stakeholders stated that in some areas the Board's proposals merely described the factors that the Board would consider in making judgements when developing Standards. They expressed the view that, as a result, the proposals did not examine fundamental concepts and were not sufficiently aspirational. The Board did not share that view. The Board viewed the *Conceptual Framework* as a practical tool to help it to develop Standards. The Board concluded that a *Conceptual Framework* would not fulfil this role if it described concepts without explaining the factors the Board needs to consider in making judgements when the application of concepts does not lead to a single answer, or leads to conflicting answers.
- BC0.14 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board drew on some concepts developed in recent standard-setting projects. The Board's aim in doing so was to reflect the Board's most developed thinking on these matters, not to justify its standard-setting decisions or current practice.
- BC0.15 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not address classification of financial instruments with characteristics of both liabilities and equity because the Board did not want to delay other much-needed improvements to the *Conceptual Framework*. The Board is exploring how to distinguish liabilities from equity in its research project on Financial Instruments with Characteristics of Equity. If necessary, the *Conceptual Framework* will be updated as one possible outcome of that project (see paragraph BC4.45).
- BC0.16 The discussion of capital and capital maintenance in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* is unchanged from the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. That discussion originally appeared in the 1989 *Framework* (see paragraphs BC8.1–BC8.4). The Board may consider revising that discussion in the future if it considers that necessary.
- BC0.17 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board did not address the equity method of accounting, the translation of amounts denominated in foreign currency or the restatement of the measuring unit in hyperinflation. The Board concluded that these issues would best be dealt with if it were to carry out projects to consider revising Standards on these topics.

Purpose (paragraph SP1.1)

- BC0.18 The 2010 *Conceptual Framework* included a long list of possible uses of the *Conceptual Framework*. In 2018, the Board streamlined the list, identifying three main uses of the *Conceptual Framework*: assisting the Board in developing Standards, assisting preparers in developing accounting policies when no Standard applies to a particular transaction or other event (or when a Standard allows a choice of accounting policy) and assisting all parties in understanding and interpreting Standards.
- BC0.19 The Board considered whether to focus the stated purpose of the *Conceptual Framework* by stating that its primary purpose would be only to assist the Board in developing Standards. The Board rejected this approach because acknowledging the assistance the *Conceptual Framework* can give to other parties would not prevent the Board from developing focused and consistent concepts that will help it to develop Standards.
- BC0.20 Although preparers apply the *Conceptual Framework* in developing accounting policies when no Standard applies to a particular transaction or other event or when a Standard allows a choice of accounting policy, a few aspects of the *Conceptual Framework* can only be applied by the Board. In such cases, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* indicates that the Board may make particular decisions in developing Standards (for example, see paragraph 7.17).

Status (paragraphs SP1.2–SP1.3)

- BC0.21 The 1989 *Framework* and the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* stated that the *Conceptual Framework* is not a Standard and does not override any specific Standards. In the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board reconfirmed this status.
- BC0.22 The Board found that the status of the *Conceptual Framework* has worked well in practice. Also, an explicit statement that the *Conceptual Framework* does not override any requirements in a Standard prevents entities from attempting to override inappropriately Standards those entities might view as contradicting the *Conceptual Framework*.
- BC0.23 In some stakeholders' view, the Board should never develop Standards that depart from the *Conceptual Framework*. The Board disagreed with this view. In some circumstances, the Board might need to depart from aspects of the *Conceptual Framework*. It is helpful for the *Conceptual Framework* to acknowledge this, and to specify that such departures are appropriate only if needed to meet the objective of general purpose financial reporting. That need might arise because conceptual thinking or the economic environment may change, and new or revised Standards might need to reflect these changes.
- BC0.24 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft expressed concerns about the implications of the proposals for future Standards. In particular, they expressed concerns about proposed changes to the definitions of an asset and a liability. In response, the Board tested the revised definitions of an asset and a liability and the guidance supporting those definitions (see paragraphs BC4.19–BC4.22). One of the aims of this test was to enable both the Board and stakeholders to assess implications of the revised concepts for future Standards. In addition, the Board tested for inconsistencies between the revised concepts and existing Standards.
- BC0.25 The aim of these tests was not to identify whether the Board should develop proposals to amend any Standards following the revision of the *Conceptual Framework*. Amending a Standard is not an automatic consequence of that revision. Changes to Standards are made to address deficiencies in financial reporting. Any changes to the *Conceptual Framework* that highlight inconsistencies in the Standards must be considered by the Board in the light of other priorities when developing its work plan.⁴

4 See paragraph 4.23 of the IFRS Foundation *Due Process Handbook*.

BC0.26 The *IFRS for SMEs*[®] Standard includes a section on the concepts and basic principles underlying the financial statements of small and medium-sized entities. That section is based on the 1989 *Framework*. The Board will consider whether it should amend this section of the *IFRS for SMEs* Standard when it next reviews that Standard.

Transition to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*

BC0.27 The Board and the IFRS Interpretations Committee will start using the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* immediately once it is issued. If, when developing a draft IFRIC[®] Interpretation, the IFRS Interpretation Committee is faced with an inconsistency between a Standard (including any Standard developed on the basis of the 1989 *Framework* or the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*) and the concepts in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, it will refer the issue to the Board, as required by the IFRS Foundation *Due Process Handbook*.⁵

BC0.28 The revised concepts will guide the Board when it develops or revises Standards. However, changes to the *Conceptual Framework* will not automatically lead to changes in existing Standards (see paragraph BC0.25). Accordingly, changes to the *Conceptual Framework* will have no immediate effect on the financial statements of most reporting entities. Preparers of financial statements could be directly affected by the changes only if they need to use the *Conceptual Framework* to develop an accounting policy when no Standard applies to a particular transaction or other event or when a Standard allows a choice of accounting policy.⁶ To achieve transition to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* for such entities, the Board issued *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards* in 2018. Where appropriate, that document replaces references in Standards to the 1989 *Framework* with references to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* and updates related quotations.

Business activities

BC0.29 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board concluded that the nature of an entity's business activities can affect the relevance of some types of financial information and that the Board may need to consider that factor when developing or revising Standards.

BC0.30 The Board disagreed with the view expressed by some stakeholders that considering the nature of an entity's business activities necessarily leads to subjectivity and impairs comparability of financial statements. An entity's business activities are a matter of fact that can in most cases be determined objectively. Hence, if entities conduct the same type of business activities, the Board expects that those activities would be reflected in a similar manner in the entities' financial statements.

BC0.31 The Board considered whether the nature of business activities should be considered in all areas of standard-setting and should be embedded in the *Conceptual Framework* as an overarching concept. The Board concluded that the nature of an entity's business activities does not affect all areas of financial reporting in the same way and to the same extent and so it should not be included as an overarching concept. Accordingly, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not include a general discussion of how an entity's business activities affect financial reporting decisions. Instead, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes that factor in the context of:

- (a) the selection of the unit of account (see paragraph 4.51(a)(iv)).

⁵ See paragraph 7.8 of the IFRS Foundation *Due Process Handbook*.

⁶ If no Standard specifically applies to a transaction, other event or condition, paragraph 11 of IAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors* requires entities to consider the *Conceptual Framework* in developing and applying an accounting policy for that transaction. If a Standard permits a choice of accounting policy, entities select an accounting policy subject to an overall requirement in IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* that financial statements must provide a fair presentation of the entity's financial position, financial performance and cash flows. The link between fair presentation and the concepts in the *Conceptual Framework* is described in paragraph 15 of IAS 1.

- (b) the selection of a measurement basis for an asset or liability and for related income and expenses (see paragraphs 6.54–6.57). In some cases, this would lead to some items of income or expenses being included in other comprehensive income (see the discussion of more than one measurement basis in paragraphs 6.83–6.86).
 - (c) classification of assets, liabilities, equity, income or expenses (see paragraph 7.7).
- BC0.32 The concept of business activities is discussed in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to assist the Board in developing Standards. In a particular Standard, the concept of business activities can be further explained and developed. The discussion of business model in IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* is one example of how the Board has applied the concept of business activities.
- BC0.33 The Board decided to use the term ‘business activities’ rather than the term ‘business model’ in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The term ‘business model’ is used with a range of different meanings by various organisations, for example, the International Integrated Reporting Council, the Enhanced Disclosure Task Force of the Financial Stability Board and various regulators. Adopting the term ‘business model’ in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* could have led to confusion with those definitions.

Implications of long-term investment

- BC0.34 The subject of long-term investment has attracted a great deal of attention from governments and others. Governments have indicated that encouraging long-term investment is an important tool for promoting economic growth.
- BC0.35 The Board considered the role of its Standards in promoting long-term investment and noted that:
- (a) the Board makes an important contribution to the promotion of investment, including long-term investment, by producing Standards that require transparent financial reporting. This is a precondition for the healthy and efficient functioning of financial markets. Transparent financial reporting helps market participants to make more efficient and informed resource allocation and other economic decisions and thus makes investment more attractive to capital providers (investors and lenders). It also provides useful inputs for an assessment of stewardship.
 - (b) it is not, however, the role of the Standards to encourage or discourage any type of investments. Instead, standard-setting decisions are driven by the need for entities to provide useful information.
- BC0.36 When developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether the *Conceptual Framework* will provide the Board with sufficient and appropriate tools to enable it, when developing Standards, to consider:
- (a) the business activity of long-term investment (see paragraphs BC0.37–BC0.39); and
 - (b) the information needs of long-term investors (see paragraphs BC0.40–BC0.43).

Long-term investment as a business activity

- BC0.37 The Board considered a suggestion made by some stakeholders that it should identify long-term investment as a particular type of business activity (or business model) and develop specific measurement and presentation and disclosure requirements for entities conducting that business activity. Some stakeholders expressing those views suggested that:
- (a) entities should not use a current value measurement basis for their long-term investments and for their liabilities; or
 - (b) if a current value measurement basis is used for those investments and liabilities, income and expenses resulting from remeasurements should be included in other comprehensive income, not in the statement of profit or loss.

- BC0.38 As discussed in paragraphs 6.54–6.57 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the nature of the business activities being conducted affects how an asset or liability contributes to future cash flows. Thus, the nature of an entity's business activities is considered in selecting a measurement basis for an asset or liability and for related income and expenses. Moreover, in some cases, considering the nature of an entity's activities may lead to some items of income and expenses being included in other comprehensive income (see paragraphs 6.85–6.86). The Board concluded that the discussion on this factor in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* provides sufficient tools for the Board to make appropriate standard-setting decisions if future projects consider how to account for the long-term investments of entities whose business activities include long-term investment or for their liabilities.
- BC0.39 For the following reasons, the Board decided that the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* should not refer explicitly to the business activity of long-term investment:
- (a) referring explicitly to any particular business activity would, inappropriately, embed excessive detail in the *Conceptual Framework*; and
 - (b) the *Conceptual Framework* does not refer to any other business activity.

Information needs of long-term investors

- BC0.40 Some stakeholders suggested that the *Conceptual Framework* should emphasise the information needs of long-term investors and that their information needs may differ from those of short-term investors. Views expressed by these stakeholders included the following:
- (a) the Board focuses too much on the needs of short-term investors.
 - (b) the Board gives too much weight to the needs of potential investors and not enough weight to the needs of existing long-term investors. Existing long-term investors own the reporting entity and bear the residual risks of ownership. Hence, these stakeholders argue that long-term investors need information that helps them to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources.
 - (c) the Board makes excessive use of current value measurement bases, particularly those reflecting market-participant assumptions, such as fair value, and those measurement bases provide information more relevant to short-term investors than to investors who are interested in long-term value creation.
 - (d) excessive use of current value measurement bases (especially for long-term investments) and recognition of unrealised gains in the statement of profit or loss may:
 - (i) lead to excessive and volatile dividend distributions that are not in the best interest of long-term investors;
 - (ii) lead to inflated management remuneration (including bonuses); and
 - (iii) encourage short-termism and financial engineering and discourage long-term investment.
- BC0.41 For the following reasons, the Board disagreed with the views expressed in paragraph BC0.40:
- (a) the Board does not place more emphasis on the needs of short-term investors than on the needs of long-term investors. The Board considers both long-term investors and short-term investors to be primary users of financial statements. Moreover, the Board believes that there is no reason why short-term investors would need information that is not also needed by long-term investors.

- (b) the *Conceptual Framework* identifies both existing and potential investors as primary users of financial statements. The Board's discussions with users in its project on the *Conceptual Framework* and in many other projects have identified no reasons why existing investors would need information that differs from the information needed by potential investors. Furthermore, the changes made by the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to the discussion of the objective of general purpose financial reporting highlight the importance of providing information to help investors to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states explicitly that decisions relating to providing resources to the entity include decisions about exercising rights to vote on, or otherwise influence, management's actions that affect the use of the entity's economic resources. Thus, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* clarifies that the needs of existing investors (including long-term investors) are considered when making decisions about the usefulness of financial information (see paragraphs BC1.36–BC1.37).
- (c) when the Board has decided to require or permit current value measurement bases, that has not been because of a belief that those measurement bases would be particularly useful to short-term investors. Instead, the Board's decisions have been driven by an assessment of what information is most likely to be useful to the primary users of financial statements, including both long-term and short-term investors. Under the concepts in Chapter 6—*Measurement* of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, this will continue to be the case.
- (d) in the Board's view, accounting information (such as reported profit) is not, and should not be, the sole determinant of distributions of dividends and bonuses. Distribution policy is affected by many other factors, for example, the entity's financing needs, current and projected liquidity, the risks faced by the entity, legal constraints and (in the case of bonus decisions) remuneration policy and incentive arrangements. These factors differ by entity, by country and over time. It would be neither desirable nor feasible for the Board to consider them in standard-setting decisions.

BC0.42 For these reasons, the Board concluded that the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* contains sufficient and appropriate discussion of primary users and their information needs, and of the objective of general purpose financial reporting, to address appropriately the needs of long-term investors.

BC0.43 Conceivably, long-term investors may need entities to provide some information that is not also needed by short-term investors; for example, long-term investors may have more extensive needs for information to support decisions to vote on, or otherwise influence, management's actions. However, the Board concluded that to help it to identify what information particular Standards should require entities to provide, there is no need for the *Conceptual Framework* to contain a specific reference to the needs of long-term investors. When the Board develops Standards, it routinely seeks input and feedback from investors, including long-term investors, to help ensure that it understands what information they need.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 1—THE OBJECTIVE OF GENERAL PURPOSE FINANCIAL REPORTING

INTRODUCTION	BC1.1
Revision in 2018	BC1.2
General purpose financial reporting (2010)	BC1.4
Financial reporting of the reporting entity (2010)	BC1.8
PRIMARY USERS	BC1.9
Primary users (2010)	BC1.9
Should there be a primary user group? (2010)	BC1.14
Why are existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors considered the primary users? (2010)	BC1.15
Primary user group (2018)	BC1.18
Should there be a hierarchy of users? (2010)	BC1.21
Information needs of other users who are not within the primary user group (2010)	BC1.22
Management’s information needs (2010)	BC1.22
Regulators’ information needs (2010)	BC1.23
USEFULNESS FOR MAKING DECISIONS	BC1.27
Usefulness for making decisions (2010)	BC1.27
Stewardship (2018)	BC1.32
The term ‘stewardship’ (2018)	BC1.41
The objective of financial reporting for different types of entities (2010)	BC1.42
INFORMATION ABOUT A REPORTING ENTITY’S ECONOMIC RESOURCES, CLAIMS AGAINST THE ENTITY AND CHANGES IN RESOURCES AND CLAIMS	BC1.44
The significance of information about financial performance (2010)	BC1.44
Financial position and solvency (2010)	BC1.47

In 2018, the Board made limited changes to Chapter 1 of the Conceptual Framework. A description of the Board's considerations in developing those changes was added to the original Basis for Conclusions on this chapter. The Board added a date to the heading of each section of the Basis for Conclusions to indicate when that section was developed. Sections of the Basis for Conclusions that reflect the Board's considerations at the time of developing the chapter in 2010 were not updated in 2018 except to add and update cross-references and to make minor necessary editorial changes.

Introduction

BC1.1 The first version of Chapter 1 was developed jointly with the FASB and issued in 2010 (see paragraph BC0.3). Consequently, this Basis for Conclusions includes some references to the FASB's literature.

Revision in 2018

BC1.2 When the Board restarted its work on the Conceptual Framework project in 2012, it did not reconsider Chapter 1 fundamentally (see paragraph BC0.11). Although some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper agreed with this approach, many stated that the Board should reconsider one or more aspects of Chapter 1. In the light of these comments, the Board considered whether to make changes in the following areas:

- (a) primary users (see paragraphs BC1.18–BC1.20); and
- (b) stewardship (see paragraphs BC1.32–BC1.41).

BC1.3 The FASB has not made any changes to its Concepts Statement No. 8 *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting—Chapter 1*, The Objective of General Purpose Financial Reporting corresponding to the limited changes made by the Board in 2018. The Board concluded that the clarity achieved by its improvements to Chapter 1 outweighs the disadvantages of divergence in those respects from the FASB's version.

General purpose financial reporting (2010)

BC1.4 Consistently with the Board's responsibilities, the *Conceptual Framework* establishes an objective of financial reporting and not just of financial statements. Financial statements are a central part of financial reporting, and most of the issues that the Board addresses involve financial statements. Although the scope of FASB Concepts Statement No. 1 *Objectives of Financial Reporting by Business Enterprises* was financial reporting, the other FASB concepts statements focused on financial statements. The scope of the Board's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, which was published by the Board's predecessor body in 1989 (1989 *Framework*), dealt with financial statements only. Therefore, for both boards the scope of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* is broader than the scopes of their previous frameworks.⁷

BC1.5 Some stakeholders suggested that advances in technology may make general purpose financial reporting obsolete. New technologies, for example the use of eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL), may make it practicable in the future for reporting entities either to prepare or to make available the information necessary for different users to assemble different financial reports to meet their individual information needs.

⁷ With the exception of Chapters 1 and 2, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* focuses on (general purpose) financial statements rather than on (general purpose) financial reports (see paragraph 3.1).

- BC1.6 To provide different reports for different users, or to make available all of the information that users would need to assemble their own custom-designed reports, would be expensive. Requiring users of financial information to assemble their own reports might also be unreasonable, because many users would need to have a greater understanding of accounting than they have now. Therefore, the Board concluded that for now a general purpose financial report is still the most efficient and effective way to meet the information needs of a variety of users.
- BC1.7 In the 2006 Discussion Paper, the Board used the term ‘general purpose external financial reporting’. External was intended to convey that internal users such as management were not the intended beneficiaries for general purpose financial reporting as established by the Board. During redeliberations, the Board concluded that this term was redundant. Therefore, Chapter 1 uses ‘general purpose financial reporting’.

Financial reporting of the reporting entity (2010)

- BC1.8 Some respondents to the 2008 Exposure Draft said that the reporting entity is not separate from its equity investors or a subset of those equity investors. This view has its roots in the days when most businesses were sole proprietorships and partnerships that were managed by their owners who had unlimited liability for the debts incurred in the course of the business. Over time, the separation between businesses and their owners has grown. The vast majority of today’s businesses have legal substance separate from their owners by virtue of their legal form of organisation, numerous investors with limited legal liability and professional managers separate from the owners. Consequently, the Board concluded that financial reports should reflect that separation by accounting for the entity (and its economic resources and claims) rather than its primary users and their interests in the reporting entity.⁸

Primary users (paragraphs 1.5, 1.8–1.10)

Primary users (2010)

- BC1.9 The objective of financial reporting in paragraph 1.2 refers to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors. The description of the primary users in paragraph 1.5 refers to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors who cannot require reporting entities to provide information directly to them. Paragraph 1.10 states that ‘regulators and members of the public other than investors, lenders and other creditors’ may find information in general purpose financial reports useful but states that those are not the parties to whom general purpose financial reports are primarily directed.
- BC1.10 Paragraph 9 of the 1989 *Framework* stated that users included ‘present and potential investors, employees, lenders, suppliers and other trade creditors’ (and later added advisers in the discussion of investors’ needs), all of which are intended to be encompassed by the phrase in paragraph 1.2. Paragraph 9 of the 1989 *Framework* also included a list of other potential users such as customers, governments and their agencies, and the public, which is similar to the list in paragraph 1.10 of those who may be interested in financial reports but are not primary users.
- BC1.11 Paragraph 10 of the 1989 *Framework* stated that ‘as investors are providers of risk capital to the entity, the provision of financial statements that meet their needs will also meet most of the needs of other users that financial statements can satisfy’, which might have been read to narrow the focus to investors only. However, paragraph 12 explicitly stated that the objective of financial statements is to provide information ‘that is useful to a wide range of users in making economic decisions.’ Thus, the 1989 *Framework* focused on investors’ needs as representative of the needs of a wide range of users but did not explicitly identify a group of primary users.

⁸ See also paragraph 3.8 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* and paragraphs BC3.9–BC3.10.

- BC1.12 FASB Concepts Statement 1 referred to ‘present and potential investors and creditors and other users in making rational investment, credit, and similar decisions’ (paragraph 34). It also stated that ‘major groups of investors are equity securityholders and debt securityholders’ and ‘major groups of creditors are suppliers of goods and services who extend credit, customers and employees with claims, lending institutions, individual lenders, and debt securityholders’ (paragraph 35). One difference in emphasis from the 1989 *Framework*, which emphasised providers of risk capital, is that Concepts Statement 1 referred to ‘both those who desire safety of investment and those who are willing to accept risk to obtain high rates of return’ (paragraph 35). However, like the 1989 *Framework*, Concepts Statement 1 stated that the terms investors and creditors ‘also may comprehend security analysts and advisors, brokers, lawyers, regulatory agencies, and others who advise or represent the interests of investors and creditors or who otherwise are interested in how investors and creditors are faring’ (paragraph 35).
- BC1.13 Paragraphs 1.3, 1.5 and 1.10 differ from the 1989 *Framework* and Concepts Statement 1 for two reasons—to eliminate differences between the 1989 *Framework* and Concepts Statement 1 and to be more direct by focusing on users making decisions relating to providing resources (but not to exclude advisers). The reasons are discussed in paragraphs BC1.15–BC1.17 and BC1.21–BC1.26.

Should there be a primary user group? (2010)

- BC1.14 The 2006 Discussion Paper and the 2008 Exposure Draft proposed identifying a group of primary users of financial reports. Some respondents to the 2008 Exposure Draft said that other users who have not provided, and are not considering providing, resources to the entity, use financial reports for a variety of reasons. The Board sympathised with their information needs but concluded that without a defined group of primary users, the *Conceptual Framework* would risk becoming unduly abstract or vague.

Why are existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors considered the primary users? (2010)

- BC1.15 Some respondents to the 2006 Discussion Paper and the 2008 Exposure Draft suggested that the primary user group should be limited to existing shareholders or the controlling entity’s majority shareholders. Others said that the primary users should be existing shareholders and creditors, and that financial reports should focus on their needs.
- BC1.16 The reasons why the Board concluded that the primary user group should be the existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of a reporting entity are:
- (a) Existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors have the most critical and immediate need for the information in financial reports and many cannot require the entity to provide the information to them directly.
 - (b) The Board’s and the FASB’s responsibilities require them to focus on the needs of participants in capital markets, which include not only existing investors but also potential investors and existing and potential lenders and other creditors.
 - (c) Information that meets the needs of the specified primary users is likely to meet the needs of users both in jurisdictions with a corporate governance model defined in the context of shareholders and those with a corporate governance model defined in the context of all types of stakeholders.
- BC1.17 Some respondents expressed the view that the specified primary user group was too broad and that it would result in too much information in the financial reports. However, too much is a subjective judgement. In developing financial reporting requirements that meet the objective of financial reporting, the boards will rely on the qualitative characteristics of, and the cost constraint on, useful financial information to provide discipline to avoid providing too much information.

Primary user group (2018)

- BC1.18 Views expressed by respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper and to the 2015 Exposure Draft about the description of the primary user group were similar to those expressed by stakeholders and considered by the Board when it originally developed Chapter 1:
- (a) some respondents commented that the primary user group is defined too narrowly. They argued that it should be expanded to include, for example, employees, customers, suppliers, regulators and others.
 - (b) in contrast, others said that the primary user group is defined too broadly. These respondents stated that the Board should describe primary users as holders of equity claims against the entity (or perhaps as the holders of the most residual equity claims against the entity). The respondents argued that holders of equity claims have different (and perhaps more extensive) information needs than other capital providers because they are exposed to more extensive risks.
- BC1.19 In the light of views expressed by respondents, the Board reconsidered the description of the primary user group. Nevertheless, it concluded that its reasons for describing the primary user group as the existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of a reporting entity were still valid (see paragraph BC1.16). In addition, as explained in paragraph 1.8 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, focusing on the common information needs of the primary users does not prevent a reporting entity from including additional information that is most useful to a particular subset of primary users. Consequently, the Board concluded that no changes to the description of the primary user group were needed.
- BC1.20 In addition, the Board decided that there was no need for the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to identify long-term investors as a particular subset of primary users with specific information needs (see paragraphs BC0.40–BC0.41).

Should there be a hierarchy of users? (2010)

- BC1.21 Some respondents to the 2008 Exposure Draft who supported the composition of the primary user group also recommended that the Board should establish a hierarchy of primary users because investors, lenders and other creditors have different information needs. However, the Board observed that individual users may have information needs and desires that are different from, and possibly conflict with, those of other users with the same type of interest in the reporting entity. General purpose financial reports are intended to provide common information to users and cannot accommodate every request for information. The Board will seek the information set that is intended to meet the needs of the maximum number of users in cost-beneficial ways.

Information needs of other users who are not within the primary user group (2010)

Management's information needs (2010)

- BC1.22 Some stakeholders questioned the interaction between general purpose financial reporting and management's needs. The Board stated that some of the information directed to the primary users is likely to meet some of management's needs but not all of them. However, management has the ability to access additional financial information, and consequently, general purpose financial reporting need not be explicitly directed to management.

Regulators' information needs (2010)

- BC1.23 Some stakeholders said that maintaining financial stability in capital markets (the stability of a country's or region's economy or financial systems) should be an objective of financial reporting. They stated that financial reporting should focus on the needs of regulators and fiscal policy decision-makers who are responsible for maintaining financial stability.
- BC1.24 Other stakeholders opposed establishing an objective to maintain financial stability. They said that financial statements should present the economic reality of the reporting entity with as little bias as possible, but that such a presentation is not necessarily inconsistent with a financial stability objective. By presenting economic reality, financial statements could lead to more informed decision-making and thereby support financial stability even if that is not the primary aim.⁹
- BC1.25 However, advocates of a financial stability objective had a different outcome in mind. They did not encourage the Board to require reporting entities to provide information for use by regulators and fiscal policy decision-makers. Instead, they recommended that the Board consider the consequences of new Standards for the stability of the world's economies and financial systems and, at least at times, assign greater weight to that objective than to the information needs of investors, lenders and other creditors.
- BC1.26 The Board acknowledged that the interests of investors, lenders and other creditors often overlap with those of regulators. However, expanding the objective of financial reporting to include maintaining financial stability could at times create conflicts between the objectives that the Board is not well-equipped to resolve. For example, some may take the view that the best way to maintain financial stability is to require entities not to report, or to delay reporting, some changes in asset or liability values. That requirement would almost certainly result in depriving investors, lenders and other creditors of information that they need. The only way to avoid conflicts would be to eliminate or de-emphasise the existing objective of providing information to investors, lenders and other creditors. The Board concluded that eliminating that objective would be inconsistent with its basic mission, which is to serve the information needs of participants in capital markets. The Board also noted that providing financial information that is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent can improve users' confidence in the information, and thus contribute to promoting financial stability.¹⁰

Usefulness for making decisions (paragraphs 1.2–1.4)

Usefulness for making decisions (2010)

- BC1.27 Both the Board's and the FASB's previous frameworks focused on providing information that is useful in making economic decisions as the fundamental objective of financial reporting. Those frameworks also stated that financial information that is useful in making economic decisions would also be helpful in assessing how management has fulfilled its stewardship responsibility.

⁹ One group expressing that view was the Financial Crisis Advisory Group (FCAG). The FCAG comprised approximately 20 senior leaders with broad experience in international financial markets and an interest in the transparency of financial reporting information. The FCAG was formed in 2009 to advise the Board and the FASB about the standard-setting implications of the financial crisis and of potential changes in the global regulatory environment.

¹⁰ See also paragraphs BC0.34–BC0.43 for the Board's 2018 discussion on the role of Standards in promoting long-term investment and paragraph SP1.5 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* for an explanation of the *Conceptual Framework's* contribution to the mission of the IFRS Foundation and of the Board, which is to develop Standards that bring transparency, accountability and efficiency to financial markets.

- BC1.28 The 2006 Discussion Paper that led to Chapter 1 stated that the objective of financial reporting should focus on resource allocation decisions. Although most respondents to the 2006 Discussion Paper agreed that providing useful information for decision-making was the appropriate objective, they said that investors, lenders and other creditors make other decisions that are aided by financial reporting information in addition to resource allocation decisions. For example, shareholders who vote on whether to retain directors or replace them, and on how members of management should be remunerated for their services, need information on which to base their decisions. Shareholders' decision-making process may include evaluating how management of the entity performed against management in competing entities in similar circumstances.
- BC1.29 The Board agreed with these respondents and noted that, in most cases, information designed for resource allocation decisions would also be useful for assessing management's performance. Therefore, in the 2008 Exposure Draft leading to Chapter 1, the Board proposed that the objective of financial reporting is to provide financial information about the reporting entity that is useful to present and potential investors, lenders and other creditors in making decisions in their capacity as capital providers. The 2008 Exposure Draft also described the role financial statements can have in supporting decisions related to the stewardship of an entity's resources.
- BC1.30 The 2008 Exposure Draft discussed the *Objective of Financial Reporting and Decision-usefulness* in separate sections. The Board combined those two sections in Chapter 1 because usefulness in making decisions is the objective of financial reporting. Consequently, both sections addressed the same points and provided more detail than was necessary. Combining those two sections resulted in eliminating the separate subsections on usefulness in assessing cash flow prospects and usefulness in assessing stewardship. The Board did not intend to imply that assessing prospects for future cash flow or assessing the quality of management's stewardship is more important than the other. Both are important for making decisions about providing resources to an entity, and information about stewardship is also important for resource providers who have the ability to vote on, or otherwise influence, management's actions.
- BC1.31 The Board decided not to use the term 'stewardship' in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* because there would be difficulties in translating it into other languages. Instead, the Board described what stewardship encapsulates. Accordingly, the objective of financial reporting in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* acknowledged that users make resource allocation decisions as well as decisions as to whether management has made efficient and effective use of the resources provided.

Stewardship (2018)

- BC1.32 After Chapter 1 was issued in 2010, some stakeholders interpreted the chapter, and in particular the removal from it of the term 'stewardship', as neglecting the fact that users of financial statements need information to help them to assess management's stewardship. As mentioned in paragraph BC1.30, the Board had not intended to neglect that need. Nevertheless, the Board concluded subsequently that the wording in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* was not clear enough.
- BC1.33 Thus, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board improved the wording to clarify its original intention. The Board reintroduced the term 'stewardship' and, in describing the objective of general purpose financial reporting, gave more prominence to the importance of providing information needed to assess management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources. That extra prominence contributes to highlighting management's accountability to users for economic resources entrusted to their care.
- BC1.34 To provide that greater prominence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies information needed to assess management's stewardship as possibly partly separate from the information needed to help users to assess the prospects for future net cash inflows to the entity. Both types of information are needed to meet the overall objective of financial reporting—that is to provide information that is useful for making decisions relating to providing resources to the entity (resource allocation decisions).

BC1.35 The Board also considered other approaches suggested by some stakeholders. Those approaches would have identified the provision of information to help to assess management's stewardship as part of the objective of financial reporting or as an additional and equally prominent objective. The Board rejected those approaches because:

- (a) assessing management's stewardship is not an end in itself; it is an input needed in making resource allocation decisions. For example, a conclusion that management's stewardship is unsatisfactory may lead to a decision to replace management with the aim of increasing future returns.
- (b) introducing an additional objective of financial reporting could be confusing.

BC1.36 Further, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board clarified how the assessment of management's stewardship contributed to resource allocation decisions. The Board did this by expanding the explanation of resource allocation decisions. The feedback on the 2015 Exposure Draft indicated that some respondents interpreted resource allocation decisions as referring solely to buying, selling or holding decisions. Thus, in their view, resource allocation decisions excluded decisions made while holding an investment, for example, decisions to reappoint or replace management, to assess the adequacy of management's remuneration or to approve a business strategy proposed by management.

BC1.37 The Board did not intend resource allocation decisions to be interpreted narrowly as referring solely to buying, selling or holding decisions. Consequently, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states explicitly that resource allocation decisions involve decisions about:

- (a) buying, selling or holding equity and debt instruments;
- (b) providing or settling loans and other forms of credit; or
- (c) exercising rights to vote on, or otherwise influence, management's¹¹ actions that affect the use of the entity's economic resources.

Users of financial statements need to assess both the amount, timing and uncertainty of future net cash inflows and management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources to make any of these decisions.

BC1.38 Paragraph BC1.37(c) refers to management's actions that affect the use of the entity's economic resources. One example of a decision about such actions is a decision in voting on the membership of the Board of directors. That vote will ultimately influence the Board of directors' subsequent actions affecting the use of the entity's economic resources. However, financial reporting is not designed to provide information that will help the primary users of that information to exercise their rights to vote on other actions by management, such as developing a statement on an issue of a public policy that does not directly affect the use of the entity's economic resources.

BC1.39 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft suggested that in some cases the information needed to assess management's stewardship differs from the information needed to assess prospects for future net cash inflows to the entity. In particular, these respondents focused on the selection of a measurement basis:

- (a) some respondents suggested that, in some cases, historical cost measures are more useful than current value measures for assessing stewardship because, in their opinion, historical cost measures are more verifiable and provide a more direct link to the transactions actually undertaken by management; and
- (b) in contrast, other respondents argued that, in some cases, current value measures may be more useful for assessing stewardship because, in their opinion, such measures can provide information about how well management has performed in comparison with other courses of action currently available.

11 The term 'management' refers to management and the governing board of an entity (see paragraph 1.4(b) of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*).

BC1.40 In giving more prominence to stewardship within the description of the objective of financial reporting in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board did not intend to imply a preference for any particular measurement basis. Factors to be considered in the selection of a measurement basis are discussed in Chapter 6—*Measurement* of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

The term ‘stewardship’ (2018)

BC1.41 The revised Chapter 1 reintroduces the term ‘stewardship’ and explains that the assessment of management’s stewardship involves assessing how efficiently and effectively the entity’s management and governing board have discharged their responsibilities to use the entity’s economic resources (see paragraphs 1.4 and 1.22–1.23). That assessment enables users of financial statements to hold management to account for its actions. The Board’s use of the term ‘stewardship’ is consistent with the general understanding of that term: the careful and responsible management of something entrusted to one’s care.¹² These improvements to Chapter 1 provide increased clarity and the Board concluded that this outweighs the translation difficulties identified in 2010.

The objective of financial reporting for different types of entities (2010)

BC1.42 The Board considered whether the objective of general purpose financial reporting should differ for different types of entities. Possibilities include:

- (a) smaller entities versus larger entities;
- (b) entities with listed (publicly traded) debt or equity financial instruments versus those without such instruments; and
- (c) closely held entities versus those with widely dispersed ownership.

BC1.43 External users of financial reporting have similar objectives, irrespective of the type of entities in which they invest. Therefore, the Board concluded that the objective of general purpose financial reports is the same for all entities. However, cost constraints and differences in activities among entities may sometimes lead the Board to permit or require differences in reporting for different types of entities.

12 This definition of stewardship is provided in the Merriam-Webster online dictionary (<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/stewardship>).

Information about a reporting entity's economic resources, claims against the entity and changes in resources and claims (paragraphs 1.12–1.21)

The significance of information about financial performance (2010)

BC1.44 A long-standing assertion by many stakeholders is that a reporting entity's financial performance as represented by comprehensive income and its components is the most important information.¹³ Concepts Statement 1 (paragraph 43) stated:

The primary focus of financial reporting is information about an enterprise's performance provided by measures of comprehensive income and its components. Investors, creditors, and others who are concerned with assessing the prospects for enterprise net cash inflows are especially interested in that information.

In contrast, the 1989 *Framework* considered information on the reporting entity's financial position and financial performance of equal importance.

BC1.45 To be useful for decision-making, financial reports must provide information about a reporting entity's economic resources and claims, and the change during a period in economic resources and claims. A reporting entity cannot provide reasonably complete information about its financial performance (as represented by comprehensive income, profit or loss or other similar terms) without identifying and measuring its economic resources and the claims. Consequently, the Board concluded that to designate one type of information as the primary focus of financial reporting would be inappropriate.

BC1.46 In discussing the financial position of an entity, the 2008 Exposure Draft referred to 'economic resources and claims on them'. The chapter uses the phrase 'the entity's economic resources and the claims against the reporting entity' (see paragraph 1.12). The reason for the change is that in many cases, claims against an entity are not claims on specific resources. In addition, many claims will be satisfied using resources that will result from future net cash inflows. Thus, while all claims are claims against the entity, not all are claims against the entity's existing resources.

Financial position and solvency (2010)

BC1.47 Some stakeholders have suggested that the main purpose of the statement of financial position should be to provide information that helps assess the reporting entity's solvency. The question is not whether information provided in the financial reports should be helpful in assessing solvency; clearly, it should. Assessing solvency is of interest to investors, lenders and other creditors, and the objective of general purpose financial reporting is to provide information that is useful to them for making decisions.

BC1.48 However, some have suggested that the statement of financial position should be directed towards the information needs of lenders, other creditors and regulators, possibly to the detriment of investors and other users. To do so would be inconsistent with the objective of serving the common information needs of the primary user group. Therefore, the Board rejected the notion of directing the statement of financial position (or any other particular financial statement) towards the needs of a particular subset of users.

¹³ Concepts Statement 1 referred to 'earnings and its components'. However, FASB Concepts Statement No. 6 *Elements of Financial Statements* substituted the term 'comprehensive income' for the term 'earnings'. The latter term is reserved for a component of comprehensive income.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 2—QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

INTRODUCTION	BC2.1
Revision in 2018	BC2.2
THE OBJECTIVE OF FINANCIAL REPORTING AND THE QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF USEFUL FINANCIAL INFORMATION (2010)	BC2.5
FUNDAMENTAL AND ENHANCING QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS (2010)	BC2.9
FUNDAMENTAL QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS	BC2.12
Relevance	BC2.12
Predictive and confirmatory value (2010)	BC2.15
The difference between predictive value and related statistical terms (2010)	BC2.17
Materiality (2010)	BC2.18
Materiality (2018)	BC2.20
Faithful representation	BC2.21
Replacement of the term ‘reliability’ (2010)	BC2.22
Retention of the term ‘faithful representation’ (2018)	BC2.28
Substance over form (2010)	BC2.32
Substance over form (2018)	BC2.33
Prudence and neutrality (2010)	BC2.34
Prudence (2018)	BC2.37
Measurement uncertainty (2018)	BC2.46
Can faithful representation be empirically measured? (2010)	BC2.50
Applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics (2018)	BC2.52
ENHANCING QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS	BC2.58
Comparability (2010)	BC2.58
Verifiability (2010)	BC2.60
Timeliness (2010)	BC2.63
Understandability (2010)	BC2.66
QUALITATIVE CHARACTERISTICS NOT INCLUDED (2010)	BC2.70
THE COST CONSTRAINT ON USEFUL FINANCIAL REPORTING (2010)	BC2.73

In 2018, the Board made limited changes to Chapter 2 of the Conceptual Framework. A description of the Board's considerations in developing those changes was added to the original Basis for Conclusions on this chapter. The Board added a date to the heading of each section of the Basis for Conclusions to indicate when that section was developed. Sections of the Basis for Conclusions that reflect the Board's considerations at the time of developing the chapter in 2010 were not updated in 2018 except to add and update cross-references and to make minor necessary editorial changes.

Introduction

BC2.1 The first version of this chapter was developed jointly with the FASB and issued in 2010 as Chapter 3 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* (see paragraph BC0.3). Consequently, this Basis for Conclusions includes some references to the FASB's literature.

Revision in 2018

BC2.2 When the Board restarted its work on the *Conceptual Framework* project in 2012, it did not reconsider fundamentally the chapter on the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information (see paragraph BC0.11). Although some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper agreed with this approach, many stated that the Board should reconsider one or more aspects of this chapter. In the light of these comments, the Board considered whether to make changes in the following areas:

- (a) materiality (see paragraph BC2.20);
- (b) reliability and measurement uncertainty (see paragraphs BC2.28–BC2.31 and BC2.46–BC2.49);
- (c) substance over form (see paragraph BC2.33);
- (d) prudence (see paragraphs BC2.37–BC2.45); and
- (e) applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics (see paragraphs BC2.52–BC2.57).

BC2.3 In addition, the Board renumbered the chapter on qualitative characteristics of useful financial information as Chapter 2. The Board also made some editorial changes to Chapter 2, mainly to use the term 'faithful representation' more precisely by discussing whether financial information faithfully represents what it purports to represent (for example, an economic phenomenon), rather than by discussing whether financial information itself is faithfully represented.

BC2.4 The FASB has not made any changes to its Concepts Statement No. 8 *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting—Chapter 3, Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Financial Information* corresponding to the limited changes made by the Board in 2018. The Board concluded that the clarity achieved by its improvements to Chapter 2 outweigh the disadvantages of divergence in those respects from the FASB's version.

The objective of financial reporting and the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information (2010)

BC2.5 Alternatives are available for all aspects of financial reporting, including recognition, derecognition, measurement, classification, presentation and disclosure. When developing Standards, the Board will choose the alternative that goes furthest towards achieving the objective of financial reporting. Preparers of financial information will also have to choose among the alternatives in a way that achieves the objective of financial reporting if no Standards apply or if application of a particular Standard requires judgements or provides options.

- BC2.6 Chapter 1 specifies that the objective of general purpose financial reporting is to provide financial information about the reporting entity that is useful to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors in making decisions about providing resources to the entity. The decision-makers on which this *Conceptual Framework* focuses are existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors.
- BC2.7 That objective by itself leaves a great deal to judgement and provides little guidance on how to exercise that judgement. Chapter 2 describes the first step in making the judgements needed to apply that objective. It identifies and describes the qualitative characteristics that financial information should have if it is to meet the objective of financial reporting. It also discusses cost, which is a pervasive constraint on financial reporting.
- BC2.8 Subsequent chapters use the qualitative characteristics to help guide choices about recognition, measurement and the other aspects of financial reporting.

Fundamental and enhancing qualitative characteristics (2010) (paragraph 2.4)

- BC2.9 Chapter 2 distinguishes between the fundamental qualitative characteristics that are the most critical and the enhancing qualitative characteristics that are less critical but still highly desirable. The 2006 Discussion Paper did not explicitly distinguish between those qualitative characteristics. The Board made the distinction later because of confusion among respondents to the 2006 Discussion Paper about how the qualitative characteristics relate to each other.
- BC2.10 Some respondents to the 2008 Exposure Draft stated that all of the qualitative characteristics should be considered equal, and that the distinction between fundamental and enhancing qualitative characteristics was arbitrary. Others said that the most important qualitative characteristic differs depending on the circumstances; therefore, differentiating qualitative characteristics was not appropriate.
- BC2.11 The Board does not agree that the distinction is arbitrary. Financial information without the two fundamental qualitative characteristics of relevance and faithful representation is not useful, and it cannot be made useful by being more comparable, verifiable, timely or understandable. However, financial information that is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent may still be useful even if it does not have any of the enhancing qualitative characteristics.

Fundamental qualitative characteristics (paragraphs 2.5–2.22)

Relevance (paragraphs 2.6–2.11)

- BC2.12 It is self-evident that financial information is useful for making a decision only if it is capable of making a difference in that decision. ‘Relevance’ is the term used in the *Conceptual Framework* to describe that capability. It is a fundamental qualitative characteristic of useful financial information.
- BC2.13 The definition of relevance in the *Conceptual Framework* is consistent with the definition in FASB Concepts Statement No. 2 *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information*. The 1989 *Framework* definition of relevance was that information is relevant only if it actually makes a difference in users’ decisions. However, users consider a variety of information from many sources, and the extent to which a decision is affected by information about a particular economic phenomenon is difficult, if not impossible, to determine, even after the fact.

BC2.14 In contrast, whether information is capable of making a difference in a decision (relevance as defined in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*) can be determined. One of the primary purposes of publishing exposure drafts and other due process documents is to seek the views of users on whether information that would be required by proposed Standards is capable of making a difference in their decisions. The Board also assesses relevance by meeting users to discuss proposed Standards, potential agenda decisions, effects on reported information of applying recently implemented Standards and other matters.

Predictive and confirmatory value (2010) (paragraphs 2.7–2.10)

BC2.15 Many decisions by investors, lenders and other creditors are based on implicit or explicit predictions about the amount and timing of the return on an equity investment, loan or other debt instrument. Consequently, information is capable of making a difference in one of those decisions only if it will help users to make new predictions, confirm or correct prior predictions or both (which is the definition of predictive or confirmatory value).

BC2.16 The 1989 *Framework* identified predictive value and confirmatory value as components of relevance, and Concepts Statement 2 referred to predictive value and feedback value. The Board concluded that confirmatory value and feedback value were intended to have the same meaning. The Board and the FASB agreed that both boards would use the same term (confirmatory value) to avoid giving the impression that the two frameworks were intended to be different.

The difference between predictive value and related statistical terms (2010)

BC2.17 Predictive value, as used in the *Conceptual Framework*, is not the same as predictability and persistence as used in statistics. Information has predictive value if it can be used in making predictions about the eventual outcomes of past or current events. In contrast, statisticians use predictability to refer to the accuracy with which it is possible to foretell the next number in a series and persistence to refer to the tendency of a series of numbers to continue to change as it has changed in the past.

Materiality (2010) (paragraph 2.11)

BC2.18 Concepts Statement 2 and the 1989 *Framework* discussed materiality and defined it similarly. Concepts Statement 2 described materiality as a constraint on financial reporting that can be considered only together with the qualitative characteristics, especially relevance and faithful representation. The 1989 *Framework*, on the other hand, discussed materiality as an aspect of relevance and did not indicate that materiality has a role in relation to the other qualitative characteristics.

BC2.19 The 2006 Discussion Paper and the 2008 Exposure Draft proposed that materiality is a pervasive constraint in financial reporting because it is pertinent to all of the qualitative characteristics. However, some respondents to the 2008 Exposure Draft agreed that although materiality is pervasive, it is not a constraint on a reporting entity's ability to report information. Rather, materiality is an aspect of relevance, because immaterial information does not affect a user's decision. Furthermore, a standard-setter does not consider materiality when developing standards because it is an entity-specific consideration. The boards agreed with those views and concluded that materiality is an aspect of relevance that applies at the individual entity level.

Materiality (2018)

BC2.20 In revising the *Conceptual Framework* in 2018, the Board concluded that the concept of materiality is described clearly in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. Hence, the Board did not amend that description of materiality, except to clarify that the users mentioned in the description are the primary users of general purpose financial reports, as described in paragraph 1.5 of the *Conceptual Framework*. This clarification emphasises that decisions about materiality are intended to reflect the needs of the primary users, not the needs of any other group.

Faithful representation (paragraphs 2.12–2.19)

BC2.21 The discussion of faithful representation in Chapter 3 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* differed from that in the previous frameworks in two significant ways. First, it used the term ‘faithful representation’ instead of the term ‘reliability’. Second, substance over form, prudence (conservatism) and verifiability, which had been aspects of reliability in Concepts Statement 2 and the 1989 *Framework*, were not considered aspects of faithful representation in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. References to substance over form and prudence were removed in 2010 for the reasons described in paragraphs BC2.32 and BC2.34, but they were reinstated, with clarifications, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. Since 2010, verifiability has been described as an enhancing qualitative characteristic rather than as part of this fundamental qualitative characteristic (see paragraphs 2.30–2.32).

Replacement of the term ‘reliability’ (2010)

BC2.22 Concepts Statement 2 and the 1989 *Framework* used the term ‘reliability’ to describe what is now called faithful representation.

BC2.23 Concepts Statement 2 listed representational faithfulness, verifiability and neutrality as aspects of reliability and discussed completeness as part of representational faithfulness.

BC2.24 The 1989 *Framework* said:

Information has the quality of reliability when it is free from material error and bias and can be depended upon by users to represent faithfully that which it either purports to represent or could reasonably be expected to represent.

The 1989 *Framework* also discussed substance over form, neutrality, prudence and completeness as aspects of faithful representation.

BC2.25 Unfortunately, neither framework clearly conveyed the meaning of reliability. The comments of respondents to numerous proposed standards indicated a lack of a common understanding of the term ‘reliability’. Some focused on verifiability or free from material error to the virtual exclusion of faithful representation. Others focused more on faithful representation, perhaps combined with neutrality. Some apparently think that reliability refers primarily to precision.

BC2.26 Because attempts to explain what reliability was intended to mean in this context have proved unsuccessful, the Board sought a different term that would more clearly convey the intended meaning. The term ‘faithful representation’, the faithful depiction in financial reports of economic phenomena, was the result of that search. That term encompasses the main characteristics that the previous frameworks included as aspects of reliability.

BC2.27 Many respondents to the 2006 Discussion Paper and the 2008 Exposure Draft opposed the Board's preliminary decision to replace 'reliability' with 'faithful representation'. Some said that the Board could have better explained what reliable means rather than replacing the term. However, many respondents who made those comments assigned a different meaning to reliability from what the Board meant. In particular, many respondents' descriptions of reliability more closely resembled the Board's notion of verifiability than its notion of reliability. Those comments led the Board to affirm its decision to replace the term 'reliability' with 'faithful representation'.

Retention of the term 'faithful representation' (2018)

BC2.28 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether to reinstate the term 'reliability' as a label for the qualitative characteristic now called 'faithful representation'. Arguments given for such a reinstatement by some stakeholders included:

- (a) the term 'reliability' is clearer and better understood than the term 'faithful representation'.
- (b) the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* implies that anything can be faithfully represented if sufficient explanatory information is given. This interpretation of faithful representation would allow the recognition of items that cannot be measured reliably. Consequently, the qualitative characteristic of faithful representation does not act as an effective filter when identifying the types of information to be included in financial statements.
- (c) the 1989 *Framework* acknowledged a trade-off between the qualitative characteristics of relevance and reliability. More relevant information may lack reliability and more reliable information may lack relevance. Some respondents expressed the view that this trade-off was missing in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* (see paragraphs BC2.52–BC2.57).
- (d) the idea that financial statements should be credible, that is, that users need assurance that they can depend on financial statements to faithfully represent what they purport to represent, is a key concept that should be acknowledged in the *Conceptual Framework*. Treating that concept solely as an enhancing qualitative characteristic (verifiability, see paragraphs BC2.60–BC2.62) gives it too little weight.

BC2.29 The Board noted that the notion of reliability was used in two different ways in Standards:

- (a) to mean that the level of measurement uncertainty is tolerable. This use of the word reflects the recognition criteria included in the 1989 *Framework* (and not reviewed in amending the 1989 *Framework* in 2010)—an item that meets the definition of an element is recognised only if it is probable there will be a flow of economic benefits and it has a cost or value that can be measured with reliability.
- (b) to refer to a qualitative characteristic of useful financial information—the characteristic previously called 'reliability' and now called 'faithful representation'. This use of reliability is much less frequent in Standards.

BC2.30 The decision to change from the term 'reliability' to the term 'faithful representation' was made to avoid confusion between the two uses of the word 'reliability' described in paragraph BC2.29. The responses both to the 2013 Discussion Paper and the 2015 Exposure Draft seemed to confirm that many respondents continue to equate the word 'reliability' with a tolerable level of measurement uncertainty, not with the qualitative characteristic described in the 1989 *Framework*. Hence, the Board retained the term 'faithful representation' as the label for the qualitative characteristic previously called 'reliability'. However, to address concerns that the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* did not adequately discuss the role of measurement uncertainty in financial reporting, the Board included in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* a discussion of how measurement uncertainty affects the usefulness of financial information (see paragraphs 2.19, 2.22 and BC2.46–BC2.49). Furthermore, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses the role of measurement uncertainty in decisions about recognition and measurement (see paragraphs 5.19–5.23 and 6.60).

BC2.31 Following the 2018 amendments to the discussion of prudence and substance over form (see paragraphs BC2.37–BC2.45 and BC2.33), the description of the qualitative characteristic of reliability in the 1989 *Framework* and the description of the qualitative characteristic of faithful representation in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* are substantially aligned. Table 2.1 compares those descriptions.

Table 2.1—Reliability in the 1989 *Framework* and faithful representation in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*

1989 <i>Framework</i> Reliability	2018 <i>Conceptual Framework</i> Faithful representation
Can be depended on by users to faithfully represent what it purports to represent	Faithfully represents the phenomena that it purports to represent (see paragraph 2.12)
Complete	Complete (see paragraph 2.14)
Neutral	Neutral (see paragraph 2.15)
Free from material error or bias	Free from error and neutral (see paragraphs 2.18 and 2.15)
Substance over form	Substance over form (see paragraph 2.12)
Prudence	Prudence (see paragraphs 2.16–2.17)

Substance over form (2010) (paragraph 2.12)

BC2.32 In the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*, substance over form was not considered a separate component of faithful representation because the Board concluded that it would be redundant. Faithful representation means that financial information represents the substance of an economic phenomenon rather than merely representing its legal form. Representing a legal form that differs from the economic substance of the underlying economic phenomenon could not result in a faithful representation.

Substance over form (2018)

BC2.33 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board noted that some stakeholders had inferred that the 2010 deletion of the reference to substance over form meant that the Board was no longer committed to depicting the substance of an economic phenomenon. The Board did not intend to imply such a change. Accordingly, to avoid any further misunderstandings and to highlight the Board’s intention, the Board reinstated in paragraph 2.12 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* an explicit reference to the need to faithfully represent the substance of an economic phenomenon. The Board explained further how to provide a faithful representation of the substance of contractual rights and contractual obligations in paragraphs 4.59–4.62 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

Prudence and neutrality (2010) (paragraph 2.15)

BC2.34 Chapter 2 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* did not include prudence or conservatism as an aspect of faithful representation because the Board concluded then that including either would be inconsistent with neutrality. Some respondents to the 2006 Discussion Paper and the 2008 Exposure Draft disagreed with that view. They said that the framework should include conservatism, prudence or both. They said that bias should not always be assumed to be undesirable, especially in circumstances when bias, in their view, produces information that is more relevant to some users.

- BC2.35 Deliberately reflecting conservative estimates of assets, liabilities, income or equity has sometimes been considered desirable to counteract the effects of some management estimates that have been perceived as excessively optimistic. However, even with the prohibitions against deliberate misstatement that appeared in the 1989 *Framework*, an admonition to be prudent is likely to lead to a bias. Understating assets or overstating liabilities in one period frequently leads to overstating financial performance in later periods—a result that cannot be described as prudent or neutral.
- BC2.36 Other respondents to the 2008 Exposure Draft said that neutrality is impossible to achieve. In their view, relevant information must have purpose, and information with a purpose is not neutral. In other words, because financial reporting is a tool to influence decision-making, it cannot be neutral. Obviously, reported financial information is expected to influence the actions of users of that information, and the mere fact that many users take similar actions on the basis of reported information does not demonstrate a lack of neutrality. The Board does not attempt to encourage or predict specific actions of users. If financial information is biased in a way that encourages users to take or avoid predetermined actions, that information is not neutral.

Prudence (2018) (paragraphs 2.16–2.17)

- BC2.37 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board noted that different stakeholders apply the term ‘prudence’ to mean different things. In particular:
- (a) some use it to refer to being cautious when making judgements under conditions of uncertainty, but without employing more caution in judgements relating to income or assets than in those relating to expenses or liabilities (‘cautious prudence’—see paragraphs BC2.39–BC2.40).
 - (b) others use it to refer to applying systematic asymmetry—expenses are recognised at an earlier stage than is income (‘asymmetric prudence’—see paragraphs BC2.41–BC2.45). Stakeholders expressed a range of views on how to achieve such asymmetry and to what extent it should be achieved. For example, some advocate a concept of prudence that would:
 - (i) require more persuasive evidence to support the recognition of income or assets than the recognition of expenses or liabilities; or
 - (ii) require the selection of measurement bases that recognise losses at an earlier stage than gains.
- BC2.38 An understanding of prudence is linked to an understanding of the term ‘neutrality’. The Board has identified two aspects of neutrality:
- (a) the neutral application of accounting policies—applying the selected accounting policies in a neutral (ie unbiased) manner (see paragraph BC2.39); and
 - (b) the selection of neutral accounting policies—selecting accounting policies in order to provide relevant information that faithfully represents the items that it purports to represent (see paragraph BC2.44). A faithful representation requires that the depiction is neutral.

Financial information is neutral if it is not slanted, weighted, emphasised, de-emphasised or otherwise manipulated to increase the probability that the information will be received favourably or unfavourably by users.¹⁴

- BC2.39 The Board was persuaded by the arguments made by some stakeholders that applying prudence (defined as the exercise of caution when making judgements under conditions of uncertainty) can help to achieve neutrality in applying accounting policies. Thus, ‘cautious prudence’ (see paragraph BC2.37(a)) can help to achieve a faithful representation of assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses. Setting out that message clearly is expected to:

14 See paragraph 2.15 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

- (a) help preparers, auditors and regulators to counter a natural bias that management may have towards optimism; for example, the message underlines the need to exercise care in selecting the inputs used in estimating a measure that cannot be observed directly; and
- (b) help the Board to develop rigorous Standards that would reduce the risk of management bias in applying the reporting entity's accounting policies.

BC2.40 The Board found that the removal of the term 'prudence' in the 2010 revisions had led to confusion and had perhaps exacerbated the diversity in use of this term. People continued to use the term, but did not always say clearly what they meant by it. In addition, some stakeholders said that, because the term had been removed, financial information prepared using IFRS Standards was not neutral but was, in fact, imprudent. The Board concluded that it would reduce the confusion by reintroducing the term with a clear explanation that caution works both ways, so that assets and liabilities are neither overstated nor understated. Therefore, the Board reintroduced the term 'prudence', defined as the exercise of caution when making judgements under conditions of uncertainty, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

BC2.41 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft suggested that the Board should go further and identify 'asymmetric prudence' (see paragraph BC2.37(b)) as a necessary qualitative characteristic of useful financial information for these reasons:

- (a) asymmetric prudence reflects the view that investors are more interested in downside risk than upside potential;
- (b) asymmetric prudence is inherent in many Standards and the *Conceptual Framework* should acknowledge this fact so that asymmetric prudence could be applied consistently when developing Standards;
- (c) by limiting distributions to shareholders, asymmetric prudence minimises the risk that today's shareholders would benefit at the expense of future shareholders; and
- (d) by limiting management remuneration, asymmetric prudence would reduce management's opportunism and encourage long-term growth.

BC2.42 The Board did not include asymmetric prudence in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* because a systematic requirement for asymmetry in the accounting treatment of assets and liabilities or of income and expenses could sometimes conflict with the need for financial information to be relevant and provide a faithful representation. The Board noted that, depending on its exact nature, the requirement to apply asymmetric prudence in all circumstances might:

- (a) prohibit the recognition of all unrealised gains. In some circumstances, for example, in the measurement of many financial instruments, recognising unrealised gains is necessary to provide relevant information to users of financial reports.
- (b) prohibit the recognition of all unrealised gains not supported by observable market prices. In some circumstances, measuring an asset or liability at a current value (which may require the recognition of unrealised gains) provides relevant information to users of financial reports even if the current value cannot be determined directly by observing prices in an active market.
- (c) permit an entity to measure an asset at an amount lower than an unbiased estimate using the measurement basis selected for that asset or to measure a liability at an amount higher than such an estimate. Such an approach cannot result in relevant information and cannot provide a faithful representation.

BC2.43 Further, the Board noted that information in financial reports may be used as an input in determining distributions to shareholders and management remuneration, but such information is only one of the factors to be considered (see paragraph BC0.41(d)).

BC2.44 However, although the Board rejected a requirement for systematic asymmetry, the Board also concluded that not all asymmetry is inconsistent with neutrality. The selection of neutral accounting policies means selecting accounting policies in a manner that is not intended to increase the probability that financial information will be received favourably or unfavourably by users. The selection of neutral accounting policies:

- (a) does not require an entity to recognise the value of the entity in the statement of financial position. Paragraph 1.7 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that general purpose financial reports are not designed to show the value of a reporting entity.
- (b) does not require the recognition of all assets and liabilities. Chapter 5—*Recognition and derecognition* of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses recognition criteria for assets and liabilities.
- (c) does not require the measurement of all assets and liabilities at a current value. Chapter 6—*Measurement* of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses factors to consider when selecting a measurement basis. Considering those factors would not lead to such a requirement.
- (d) does not prohibit impairment tests on assets measured at historical cost. Measurement at historical cost, including an impairment test, is consistent with neutrality if that measurement basis is selected without bias. The absence of bias means that the measurement basis is selected without slanting, weighting, emphasising, de-emphasising or otherwise manipulating information to increase the probability that it will be received favourably or unfavourably by users.

BC2.45 Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* acknowledges that Standards may contain asymmetric requirements. This would be the consequence of the Board taking decisions that it believes require entities to produce the most relevant information that faithfully represents what it purports to represent, rather than a consequence of applying asymmetric prudence. Such decisions are reflected in several Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. For example, IAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets* requires one recognition threshold for contingent liabilities and a different recognition threshold for contingent assets.

Measurement uncertainty (2018) (paragraph 2.19)

BC2.46 As mentioned in paragraph BC2.28(b), some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper expressed concern that the qualitative characteristic of faithful representation did not act as an effective filter when identifying the types of information to be included in financial statements. These respondents said that the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* did not convey the idea that a high level of measurement uncertainty can make financial information less useful.

BC2.47 Paragraph QC16 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* already set out the idea that an estimate might not provide useful information if the level of uncertainty in the estimate is too large:

A faithful representation, by itself, does not necessarily result in useful information. For example, a reporting entity may receive property, plant and equipment through a government grant. Obviously, reporting that an entity acquired an asset at no cost would faithfully represent its cost, but that information would probably not be very useful. A slightly more subtle example is an estimate of the amount by which an asset's carrying amount should be adjusted to reflect an impairment in the asset's value. That estimate can be a faithful representation if the reporting entity has properly applied an appropriate process, properly described the estimate and explained any uncertainties that significantly affect the estimate. However, if the level of uncertainty in such an estimate is sufficiently large, that estimate will not be particularly useful. In other words, the relevance of the asset being faithfully represented is questionable. If there is no alternative representation that is more faithful, that estimate may provide the best available information.

BC2.48 Nevertheless, it was apparent that the link between the level of uncertainty in an estimate and its usefulness was not very visible and many readers of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* seemed to overlook it. Consequently, the 2015 Exposure Draft discussed how measurement uncertainty could affect the relevance of financial information. Respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft welcomed the discussion of measurement uncertainty. However, some argued that measurement uncertainty is an aspect of the fundamental qualitative characteristic of faithful representation rather than an aspect of relevance. The Board agreed with these arguments noting that:

- (a) measurement uncertainty makes information less verifiable. As explained in paragraph 2.30 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, verifiability helps to assure users of financial statements that information faithfully represents what it purports to represent. The higher the level of measurement uncertainty, the less assurance users have that a particular estimate provides a faithful representation of the phenomenon. Thus, measurement uncertainty affects whether economic phenomena can be faithfully represented.
- (b) paragraphs 2.20–2.21 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describe the most efficient and effective process of applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics. In line with that description, the qualitative characteristic of relevance is concerned with what particular piece of information is capable of being useful to users. On the other hand, the qualitative characteristic of faithful representation is concerned with whether that information can provide a faithful representation. Thus, measurement uncertainty associated with the estimation process does not affect relevance; it affects whether that measure can be provided in a way that produces a faithful representation.
- (c) even if information is subject to a high level of measurement uncertainty, it can be relevant. For example, if the underlying phenomenon is subject to significant risks and uncertainties, a highly uncertain measure may provide the only relevant information about that phenomenon.

BC2.49 Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes measurement uncertainty as a factor that can affect whether it is possible to provide a faithful representation. In addition, the Board noted that addressing measurement uncertainty in the discussion of faithful representation is more consistent with a notion of a trade-off between the two fundamental qualitative characteristics—relevance and faithful representation (see paragraphs 2.22 and BC2.52–BC2.56).

Can faithful representation be empirically measured? (2010)

BC2.50 Empirical accounting researchers have accumulated considerable evidence, through correlation with changes in the market prices of entities' equity or debt instruments, supporting financial information that is relevant and provides a faithful representation. However, such studies have not provided techniques for empirically measuring faithful representation apart from relevance.

BC2.51 Both previous frameworks discussed the desirability of providing statistical information about how faithfully a financial measure is represented. That would not be unprecedented. Other statistical information is sometimes reflected in financial reports. For example, some entities disclose value at risk from derivative financial instruments and similar positions. The Board expects that the use of statistical concepts for financial reporting in some situations will continue to be important. Unfortunately, the Board and the FASB have not identified any way to quantify the faithfulness of the representations in a financial report.

Applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics (2018) (paragraphs 2.20–2.22)

- BC2.52 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board discussed whether a trade-off may need to be made in applying the fundamental qualitative characteristics.
- BC2.53 The notion of a trade-off between relevance and reliability—then both identified as qualitative characteristics of useful financial information—was present in the 1989 *Framework*. The 2010 *Conceptual Framework* did not mention such a trade-off but referred to the need for both characteristics—relevance and faithful representation—to be present for information to be useful. It further stated that neither a faithful representation of an irrelevant phenomenon nor an unfaithful representation of a relevant phenomenon helps users to make useful decisions. The discussion in paragraph QC16 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* of uncertainty in estimates¹⁵ implied that a trade-off may need to be made between relevance and faithful representation (see paragraph BC2.47).
- BC2.54 Some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper expressed concern about the lack of discussion of the notion of a trade-off between qualitative characteristics in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. Their main concern seemed to relate to the relationship between the relevance of information and the tolerable level of measurement uncertainty for that information.
- BC2.55 As explained in paragraphs BC2.48–BC2.49, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board described measurement uncertainty as a factor that can affect whether it is possible to provide a faithful representation. Further, the Board clarified in paragraph 2.22 that following the process described in paragraphs 2.20–2.21 a trade-off may need to be made between relevance and faithful representation. One case when such a trade-off may need to be made is when a high level of measurement uncertainty makes it questionable whether an estimate would provide a sufficiently faithful representation of an economic phenomenon. The material in paragraph 2.22 builds on the discussion of measurement uncertainty in paragraph QC16 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* (see paragraph BC2.47).
- BC2.56 The Board concluded that an explicit acknowledgement of the trade-off between relevance and measurement uncertainty would help to explain why, in some cases, an estimate with a high level of measurement uncertainty might, nevertheless, provide useful information—for example, in cases when the only relevant information is a highly uncertain estimate.
- BC2.57 In addition, the Board updated the terminology used in the description of the process of applying fundamental qualitative characteristics. To be consistent with the description of relevance in paragraph 2.6 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* and to avoid confusion with the use of the term ‘potential’ in the definition of an economic resource (see paragraphs BC4.8–BC4.9), the Board replaced the phrase ‘has the potential to be’ with ‘is capable of being’ in paragraph 2.21.

Enhancing qualitative characteristics

Comparability (2010) (paragraphs 2.24–2.29)

- BC2.58 Comparability was an important concept in both the 1989 *Framework* and Concepts Statement 2, but the two previous frameworks disagreed on its importance. The 1989 *Framework* stated that comparability is as important as relevance and faithful representation.¹⁶ Concepts Statement 2 described comparability as a quality of the relationship between two or more pieces of information that, although important, is secondary to relevance and faithful representation.

¹⁵ In the context of paragraph QC16 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*, uncertainty of estimates refers to what the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* calls measurement uncertainty.

¹⁶ The term ‘reliability’ was used instead of ‘faithful representation’, but the meaning was intended to be similar.

BC2.59 Relevant information that provides a faithful representation is most useful if it can be readily compared with similar information reported by other entities and by the same entity in other periods. One of the most important reasons that Standards are needed is to increase the comparability of reported financial information. However, even if it is not readily comparable, information that is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent is still useful. Comparable information, however, is not useful if it is not relevant and may mislead if it does not faithfully represent what it purports to represent. Therefore, comparability is considered an enhancing qualitative characteristic instead of a fundamental qualitative characteristic.

Verifiability (2010) (paragraphs 2.30–2.32)

BC2.60 Verifiable information can be used with confidence. Lack of verifiability does not necessarily render information useless, but users are likely to be more cautious because there is a greater risk that the information does not faithfully represent what it purports to represent.

BC2.61 The 1989 *Framework* did not explicitly include verifiability as an aspect of reliability, but Concepts Statement 2 did. However, the two frameworks are not as different as it might appear because the definition of reliability in the 1989 *Framework* contained the phrase ‘and can be depended upon by users’, which implies that users need assurance on the information.

BC2.62 The 2006 Discussion Paper stated that reported financial information should be verifiable to assure users that it is free from material error and bias and can be depended on to represent what it purports to represent. Therefore, verifiability was considered an aspect of faithful representation. Some respondents pointed out that including verifiability as an aspect of faithful representation could result in excluding information that is not readily verifiable. Those respondents recognised that many forward-looking estimates that are very important in providing relevant financial information (for example, expected cash flows, useful lives and residual values) cannot be directly verified. However, excluding information about those estimates would make the financial reports much less useful. The Board agreed and repositioned verifiability as an enhancing qualitative characteristic, very desirable but not necessarily required.

Timeliness (2010) (paragraph 2.33)

BC2.63 The 1989 *Framework* discussed timeliness as a constraint that could rob information of relevance. Concepts Statement 2 described timeliness as an aspect of relevance. However, the substance of timeliness as discussed in those two previous frameworks was essentially the same.

BC2.64 The 2006 Discussion Paper described timeliness as an aspect of relevance. However, some respondents pointed out that timeliness is not part of relevance in the same sense that predictive and confirmatory value are. The Board was persuaded that timeliness is different from the other components of relevance.

BC2.65 Timeliness is very desirable, but it is not as critical as relevance and faithful representation. Timely information is useful only if it is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent. In contrast, relevant information that provides a faithful representation may still be useful (especially for confirmatory purposes) even if it is not reported in as timely a manner as would be desirable.

Understandability (2010) (paragraphs 2.34–2.36)

BC2.66 Both the 1989 *Framework* and Concepts Statement 2 included understandability, a qualitative characteristic that enables users to comprehend the information and therefore make it useful for making decisions. Both frameworks also similarly described that for financial information to be understandable, users should have a reasonable degree of financial knowledge and a willingness to study the information with reasonable diligence.

- BC2.67 Despite those discussions of understandability and users' responsibilities for understanding financial reports, misunderstanding persists. For example, some have expressed the view that a new accounting method should not be implemented because some users might not understand it, even though the new accounting method would result in reporting financial information that is useful for decision-making. They imply that understandability is more important than relevance.
- BC2.68 If understandability considerations were fundamental, it might be appropriate to avoid reporting information about very complicated things even if the information is relevant and provides a faithful representation. Classifying understandability as an enhancing qualitative characteristic is intended to indicate that information that is difficult to understand should be presented and explained as clearly as possible.
- BC2.69 To clarify another frequently misunderstood point, since 2010 the *Conceptual Framework* has explained that users are responsible for actually studying reported financial information with reasonable diligence rather than only being willing to do so (which was the statement in the previous frameworks). In addition, since 2010 the *Conceptual Framework* has stated that users may need to seek the aid of advisers to understand economic phenomena that are particularly complex.

Qualitative characteristics not included (2010)

- BC2.70 Transparency, high quality, internal consistency, true and fair view or fair presentation and credibility have been suggested as desirable qualitative characteristics of financial information. However, transparency, high quality, internal consistency, true and fair view or fair presentation are different words to describe information that has the qualitative characteristics of relevance and representational faithfulness enhanced by comparability, verifiability, timeliness and understandability. Credibility is similar but also implies trustworthiness of a reporting entity's management.
- BC2.71 Interested parties sometimes suggested other criteria for standard-setting decisions, and the Board has at times cited some of those criteria as part of the rationale for some decisions. Those criteria include simplicity, operationality, practicability or practicality, and acceptability.
- BC2.72 Those criteria are not qualitative characteristics. Instead, they are part of the overall weighing of benefits and costs of providing useful financial information. For example, a simpler method may be less costly to apply than a more complex method. In some circumstances, a simpler method may result in information that is essentially the same as, but somewhat less precise than, information produced by a more complex method. In that situation, a standard-setter would include the decrease in faithful representation and the decrease in implementation cost in weighing benefits against costs.

The cost constraint on useful financial reporting (2010) (paragraphs 2.39–2.43)

- BC2.73 Cost is a pervasive constraint that standard-setters, as well as providers and users of financial information, should keep in mind when considering the benefits of a possible new financial reporting requirement. Cost is not a qualitative characteristic of information. It is a characteristic of the process used to provide the information.
- BC2.74 The Board has attempted and continues to attempt to develop more structured methods of obtaining information about the cost of gathering and processing the information that proposed Standards would require entities to provide. The primary method used is to request interested parties, sometimes formally (such as by field tests and questionnaires), to submit cost and benefit information for a specific proposal that is quantified to the extent feasible. Those requests have resulted in helpful information and have led directly to changes to proposed requirements to reduce the costs without significantly reducing the related benefits.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 3—FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND THE REPORTING ENTITY

FOCUS ON FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	BC3.1
OBJECTIVE AND SCOPE OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	BC3.3
Information about risks	BC3.7
PERSPECTIVE ADOPTED IN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	BC3.9
GOING CONCERN ASSUMPTION	BC3.11
THE REPORTING ENTITY	BC3.12
Description and boundary of the reporting entity	BC3.13
Combined financial statements	BC3.20
Consolidated and unconsolidated financial statements	BC3.22
Joint control and significant influence	BC3.26

Focus on financial statements (paragraph 3.1)

- BC3.1 Chapter 1 sets the objective of general purpose financial reporting. Chapter 2 discusses the qualitative characteristics of financial information that is useful for achieving that objective. Those qualitative characteristics apply to both financial information provided in financial statements and financial information provided in other financial reports.
- BC3.2 Financial statements are a central part of financial reporting and most issues that the Board addresses involve financial statements. Moreover, addressing issues related to other forms of financial reporting could have substantially delayed completion of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, thus delaying the improvements it brought. Consequently, Chapters 3–8 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* focus on information provided in financial statements and do not address other forms of financial reporting, for example, management commentary, interim financial reports, press releases and supplementary material provided for analysis.¹⁷

Objective and scope of financial statements (paragraphs 3.2–3.3)

- BC3.3 The Board based the description of the objective of financial statements in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* on the description of the objective of general purpose financial reporting (see paragraph 1.2 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*) and the description of the objective of financial statements in paragraph 9 of IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*, which states:

Financial statements are a structured representation of the financial position and financial performance of an entity. The objective of financial statements is to provide information about the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity that is useful to a wide range of users in making economic decisions. Financial statements also show the results of the management's stewardship of the resources entrusted to it. To meet this objective...

- BC3.4 The description of the objective of financial statements in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* differs from the description of their objective in IAS 1 in the following ways:
- (a) to provide a link to the elements of financial statements, the description of the objective in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers to:
 - (i) assets, liabilities and equity instead of financial position; and
 - (ii) income and expenses instead of financial performance.
 - (b) the description of the objective in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not refer to providing information about cash flows. Although information about cash flows is important to users of financial statements, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not identify cash inflows and cash outflows as elements of financial statements.
 - (c) the description of the objective in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* expands on what makes information useful to primary users of financial statements in making decisions relating to providing resources to the entity. Information needs to be useful in assessing the prospects for future net cash inflows to the reporting entity and in assessing management's stewardship of the entity's economic resources.

¹⁷ In 2010, the Board issued IFRS Practice Statement 1 *Management Commentary*—a broad, non-binding framework for the presentation of management commentary to accompany financial statements prepared in accordance with the Standards.

- BC3.5 The description of the information provided in financial statements refers to the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance. A few respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft suggested that this description should also refer to the statement of cash flows and the statement of changes in equity. They argued that making explicit references only to the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance could be interpreted as implying that these two statements are more important than statements providing information about cash flows or about contributions from holders of equity claims and distributions to those holders.
- BC3.6 Paragraph 3.3(c) of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers to information about cash flows and about contributions from holders of equity claims and distributions to them. The Board does not view that information as less important than information provided in the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance. Nevertheless, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers only to those statements because only those statements provide a summary of recognised elements—assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses. In addition, it is necessary to identify those statements as the place where recognition occurs because otherwise it would not be possible to describe recognition clearly. In contrast, because cash inflows and cash outflows and contributions from holders of equity claims and distributions to them are not elements of financial statements, statements providing information about those items do not provide a summary of recognised elements.

Information about risks (paragraphs 3.3(c)(i)–3.3(c)(ii))

- BC3.7 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that financial statements provide information about the risks arising from recognised and unrecognised items that meet the definitions of an element of financial statements. Some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper expressed a concern that the term ‘risk’ was not explicitly defined. Hence, they argued that ‘information about risks’ could be understood to include almost any type of information, including information that would be best reported outside financial statements. Indeed, some argued that the information about how an entity manages risks belongs outside financial statements.
- BC3.8 However, the Board noted that information about the risks associated with an entity’s recognised and unrecognised assets and liabilities is likely to be useful in assessing the entity’s ability to generate cash flows and in assessing management’s stewardship of the entity’s economic resources. Thus, this information contributes to meeting the objective of financial statements.

Perspective adopted in financial statements (paragraph 3.8)

- BC3.9 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that financial statements provide information from the perspective of the reporting entity as a whole (often referred to as ‘the entity perspective’), not from the perspective of any particular group of the entity’s existing or potential investors, lenders or other creditors. This reflects the Board’s view that the reporting entity is separate from its investors, lenders and other creditors (see paragraph BC1.8).
- BC3.10 The Board adopted the entity perspective because it is consistent with the objective of general purpose financial reporting set out in paragraph 1.2. This objective is to provide useful information to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors rather than to provide information to a particular subset of those capital providers. If information were to be directed towards the needs of a particular subset of primary users, it might be necessary to provide different sets of financial statements for each subset. That could cause confusion and undermine confidence in financial reporting. In addition, as mentioned in paragraph BC1.6, providing different reports for different subsets of primary users could be expensive.

Going concern assumption (paragraph 3.9)

BC3.11 The description of the going concern assumption is brought forward from the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* largely unchanged, except that the phrase ‘cease trading’ replaces the phrase ‘curtail materially the scale of its operations’. This change aligned the description more closely with that used in IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* and IAS 10 *Events after the Reporting Period*.

The reporting entity (paragraphs 3.10–3.18)

BC3.12 The 2010 *Conceptual Framework* did not discuss what a reporting entity is; nor did it describe how to determine what a reporting entity comprises. In developing concepts on the reporting entity for the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered comments received on the 2010 Exposure Draft developed jointly with the FASB¹⁸ and comments received on the 2015 Exposure Draft.

Description and boundary of the reporting entity (paragraphs 3.10 and 3.13–3.14)

BC3.13 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* provides a general description of a reporting entity, rather than stating who must, should or could prepare general purpose financial statements. The Board has no authority to determine who must, should or could prepare such statements.

BC3.14 When developing the description of a reporting entity for the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether that description could be improved by including material that described some key features of a reporting entity from the 2010 Exposure Draft. In particular, in the 2010 Exposure Draft the Board:

- (a) described a reporting entity as a circumscribed area of economic activities whose financial information has the potential to be useful to existing and potential equity investors, lenders and other creditors who cannot directly obtain the information they need in making decisions about providing resources to an entity and in assessing whether management and the governing board of that entity have made efficient and effective use of the resources provided; and
- (b) set out three features that are necessary—but not always sufficient—for identifying a reporting entity:
 - (i) economic activities of an entity are being conducted, have been conducted or will be conducted;
 - (ii) economic activities of the entity can be objectively distinguished from those of other entities and from the economic environment in which the entity exists; and
 - (iii) financial information about the economic activities of that entity has the potential to be useful in making decisions about providing resources to the entity and in assessing whether the management and the governing board have made efficient and effective use of the resources provided.

BC3.15 The Board concluded that the feature mentioned in paragraph BC3.14(b)(iii) plays a role in determining the boundary of the reporting entity (see paragraph BC3.18). However, the Board did not use other material from the 2010 Exposure Draft to expand the description of the reporting entity in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* for the following reasons:

¹⁸ See the Exposure Draft *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting—The Reporting Entity* published in March 2010.

- (a) the financial statements of an entity that has never conducted and will never conduct economic activities are unlikely to provide useful information to users of financial statements; and
 - (b) the terms 'circumscribed area' and 'objectively distinguished' are vague and unclear, so they would not provide clear guidance on what constitutes a reporting entity.
- BC3.16 In the 2015 Exposure Draft the Board proposed that the boundary of a reporting entity would be set in such a way that its financial statements provide relevant information to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors and faithfully represent the economic activities of the entity. It further proposed that financial statements should describe the set of economic activities included within the reporting entity.
- BC3.17 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft expressed concern that the proposal would not sufficiently restrict what can constitute a reporting entity and that, as a result, financial statements could be prepared for any arbitrary collection of assets and liabilities and thus provide incomplete and therefore misleading information. In particular, they were concerned that a reporting entity that is a portion of an entity could choose to report on an incomplete set of economic activities, for example, by excluding from its financial statements the reporting entity's share of overheads. In addition, there may be difficulties in identifying which claims should be included in financial statements if the reporting entity is a portion of an entity.
- BC3.18 In the light of those concerns, the Board revised the discussion of the determination of the boundary of a reporting entity. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that, in determining the boundary of a reporting entity that is not a legal entity and does not comprise only legal entities all linked by a parent-subsidiary relationship, the focus is on users' information needs. As stated in paragraph 2.4, users need information that is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent. The Board concluded that the completeness and neutrality aspects of the qualitative characteristic of faithful representation are particularly important in determining the boundary of a reporting entity. For example, if the boundary of a reporting entity were determined in such a way that the boundary contains an arbitrary or incomplete set of economic activities, financial information provided in that reporting entity's financial statements would be incomplete and may also lack neutrality. Thus, if the boundary were to be determined in such a way, the resulting information would not meet users' information needs. The Board also concluded that to help users to understand what is included in a set of financial statements, those financial statements need to describe how the boundary of the reporting entity was determined and what constitutes the reporting entity.
- BC3.19 Determining the boundary of a reporting entity is normally straightforward if that entity is a legal entity or if that entity comprises only legal entities all linked by a parent-subsidiary relationship. In those cases, the boundary of the legal entity or legal entities determines the boundary of the reporting entity. Determining the boundary in this way meets users' information needs.

Combined financial statements (paragraph 3.12)

- BC3.20 The 2010 Exposure Draft stated that combined financial statements might provide useful information about a reporting entity that comprises entities under common control. Many of those who commented welcomed a discussion of this issue, but disagreed with restricting the preparation of combined financial statements to entities under common control.
- BC3.21 The Board concluded that combined financial statements can provide useful information to users of financial statements in some circumstances. Accordingly, paragraph 3.12 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* acknowledges the concept of combined financial statements. However, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not discuss when or how entities could prepare combined financial statements. The Board concluded that such discussion would be best developed if the Board decides in the future to develop a Standard on this topic.

Consolidated and unconsolidated financial statements (paragraphs 3.11 and 3.15–3.18)

- BC3.22 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses the usefulness of financial information provided in consolidated and unconsolidated financial statements. As stated in paragraph 3.2, the objective of financial statements is to provide useful financial information to primary users of those financial statements. In the case of consolidated financial statements, the information needs of primary users may differ depending on whether their focus is on the parent (see paragraphs BC3.23–BC3.24) or on the subsidiaries (see paragraph BC3.25).
- BC3.23 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board concluded that information about the assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses of the parent with its subsidiaries is useful to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of the parent (see paragraph 3.15). Consolidated financial statements provide that information.
- BC3.24 The Board also concluded that information about assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses of the parent alone is another type of information that may be useful to existing and potential investors, lenders and other creditors of the parent (see paragraph 3.17). Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that a parent may be required, or choose, to:
- (a) prepare unconsolidated financial statements in addition to consolidated financial statements it prepares; or
 - (b) provide information about the assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses of the parent alone in consolidated financial statements, in the notes.
- BC3.25 Financial statements are designed to meet the common information needs of the maximum number of primary users, so they do not necessarily include some information that is useful to only a particular subset of primary users, such as investors, lenders and other creditors of a subsidiary. For example, some information about a subsidiary's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses may be material to the financial statements of the subsidiary, but may not be material to the consolidated financial statements of the parent. The subsidiary's own financial statements are designed to provide the primary users of its financial statements with information about the subsidiary's assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses.

Joint control and significant influence

- BC3.26 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether the *Conceptual Framework* should explain the notions of joint control and significant influence. The 2010 Exposure Draft stated that joint control and significant influence do not give rise to control. The Board still agrees with that conclusion, but sees no need to embed the notions of joint control and significant influence in the *Conceptual Framework*. Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not refer to these notions. In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board did not discuss whether these notions should continue to play a role in standard-setting.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 4—THE ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

INTRODUCTION	BC4.1
DEFINITIONS—ISSUES COMMON TO BOTH ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	BC4.3
Separate definition of an economic resource	BC4.6
Deletion of the notion of an expected flow	BC4.8
Past event	BC4.15
Testing of revised definitions	BC4.19
DEFINITION OF AN ASSET	BC4.23
Economic resource	BC4.24
Focus on rights	BC4.28
Goodwill	BC4.32
Identifiability and separability	BC4.34
Other sources of value	BC4.35
Goods or services that are immediately consumed	BC4.37
Economic benefits available to all other parties	BC4.38
Control	BC4.40
Risks and rewards of ownership	BC4.41
Rejected suggestions	BC4.43
DEFINITION OF A LIABILITY	BC4.44
Obligation	BC4.47
No practical ability to avoid	BC4.49
Interpreting ‘no practical ability to avoid’	BC4.54
Terminology	BC4.56
An obligation for one party is a right for another party	BC4.59
Transfer of an economic resource	BC4.62
Present obligation as a result of past events	BC4.64
ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	BC4.69
Non-reciprocal transactions	BC4.69
Contingent liabilities and contingent assets	BC4.71
Unit of account	BC4.74
Executory contracts	BC4.78
Reporting the substance of contractual rights and obligations	BC4.88
DEFINITION OF EQUITY	BC4.89
DEFINITIONS OF INCOME AND EXPENSES	BC4.93
Income and expenses defined in terms of changes in assets and liabilities	BC4.93
Types of income and expenses	BC4.96
OTHER POSSIBLE DEFINITIONS	BC4.97

Introduction

- BC4.1 The 2010 *Conceptual Framework*, and previously the 1989 *Framework*, defined the following elements of financial statements:
- (a) an asset—as a resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits are expected to flow to the entity;
 - (b) a liability—as a present obligation of the entity arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow from the entity of resources embodying economic benefits;
 - (c) equity—as the residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities;
 - (d) income—as increases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets or decreases of liabilities that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from equity participants; and
 - (e) expenses—as decreases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of outflows or depletions of assets or incurrences of liabilities that result in decreases in equity, other than those relating to distributions to equity participants.
- BC4.2 In the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board amended these definitions.

Definitions—issues common to both assets and liabilities

- BC4.3 The Board found the definitions of an asset and a liability in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* to be useful for solving many issues in standard-setting. However, some aspects of those definitions caused confusion in practice because:
- (a) the explicit reference in the definitions of an asset and a liability to the flows of economic benefits blurred the distinction between the economic resource or obligation and the resulting flows of economic benefits; and
 - (b) some readers interpreted the term ‘expected’ as a probability threshold. In addition, some readers were unclear about the relationship between the terms ‘expected’ in the definitions and ‘probable’ in the recognition criteria.
- BC4.4 To address these issues, and for the reasons given in paragraphs BC4.6–BC4.18, the Board revised the definitions to read as follows:
- (a) an asset is a present economic resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events;
 - (b) a liability is a present obligation of the entity to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events; and
 - (c) an economic resource is a right that has the potential to produce economic benefits.
- BC4.5 Supporting guidance for the definition of an asset is discussed in paragraphs BC4.23–BC4.43 and for the definition of a liability in paragraphs BC4.44–BC4.68.

Separate definition of an economic resource (paragraph 4.4)

- BC4.6 The main structural change from the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* definitions is the introduction of a separate definition of an economic resource. This moved the references to future flows of economic benefits so that they now appear in the supporting definition of an economic resource instead of in the definitions of an asset and a liability.

BC4.7 The Board concluded that this separation would help to remove the confusion mentioned in paragraph BC4.3(a). It emphasises more clearly that an asset (or liability) is an economic resource (or obligation) and that it is not the ultimate inflow (or outflow) of economic benefits that the economic resource (or obligation) may produce. This approach also streamlines the definitions and shows more clearly the parallels between assets and liabilities.

Deletion of the notion of an expected flow (paragraphs 4.14 and 4.37)

BC4.8 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* replaces the notion used in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* that an inflow or outflow of resources is ‘expected’ with the concept that an asset (or liability) ‘has the potential to produce economic benefits’ (or ‘has the potential to require a transfer of an economic resource’). References to that concept appear in the definition of an economic resource and in the guidance supporting the definition of a liability.

BC4.9 The Board replaced the notion of an expected inflow or outflow of resources for the following reasons:

- (a) removal of ‘expected’ appropriately focuses the definition on the economic resource or obligation. To retain a notion of expected or probable outflows or inflows could exclude many items that are clearly assets and liabilities, for example, out-of-the-money purchased and written options, insurance contracts and obligations to transfer an economic resource if a specified uncertain future event occurs (see paragraph BC4.63).
- (b) the notion of expected flows is unhelpful because interpretations of this term can vary widely and are often tied to a notion of a threshold level of probability.

BC4.10 The 2013 Discussion Paper used the term ‘capable of’ producing economic benefits rather than ‘has the potential to’. However, ‘capable of’ is already used in the discussion of relevance in paragraphs 2.6–2.7 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. It could be confusing to use the term ‘capable’ with one meaning describing what information is relevant and with a different meaning in defining an economic resource. To avoid such confusion, the Board introduced the phrase ‘has the potential to’ in the definition of an economic resource.

BC4.11 The phrase ‘has the potential to produce economic benefits’ (or similarly ‘has the potential to require a transfer of an economic resource’) captures the following points:

- (a) it is not sufficient that the economic benefits may arise in the future. Those economic benefits must arise from some feature that already exists within the economic resource. For example, a purchased option has the potential to produce economic benefits for the holder, but only because the option already contains a right that will permit the holder to exercise the option.
- (b) the definition is not intended to impose a minimum probability threshold. The important thing is that in at least one circumstance the economic resource will produce economic benefits.

BC4.12 Some stakeholders stated that the Board should retain the notion of an expected inflow or outflow of resources. They stated that users and preparers of financial statements do not regard an item as an asset if inflows of economic benefits are not expected or are not at least reasonably possible. Those respondents argued that the revised definitions would considerably widen the range of items identified as assets and liabilities, which might lead to:

- (a) pressure to identify every possible asset and liability, imposing a significant operational burden for little benefit if ultimately the asset or liability is not recognised or is measured at nil;
- (b) recognition as assets and liabilities of more items that are uncertain, improbable or hard to measure, unless the recognition criteria are made more robust;
- (c) a presumption that, in principle, all assets and liabilities should be recognised even if inflows or outflows are not expected; and

- (d) pressure to provide in the notes irrelevant information about unrecognised assets and liabilities for which inflows or outflows are unlikely.

BC4.13 The Board concluded that removing the notion of 'expected'—interpreted by some as a probability threshold—would not impose a significant operational burden. In practice, an entity considers the definitions of an asset and a liability and recognition criteria at the same time to identify those assets and liabilities that the entity might need to recognise, or about which it might need to provide information in the notes.

BC4.14 In addition, the Board concluded that stakeholders' concerns about recognising assets or liabilities when the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is low are best addressed in decisions about recognition, not in the definitions (see paragraphs 4.15, 4.38, 5.15–5.17 and BC5.15–BC5.20). This approach is consistent with how the Board had applied the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* definitions for several years.

Past event (paragraphs 4.26 and 4.42–4.47)

BC4.15 In the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*:

- (a) the phrase ‘as a result of past events’ remains in the definitions of an asset and a liability; and
- (b) the word ‘present’ remains in the definition of a liability and is inserted in the definition of an asset.

BC4.16 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board considered whether references to both ‘present’ and ‘as a result of past events’ are needed in the definitions of an asset and a liability.

BC4.17 The Board did not identify any significant problems that had arisen from including the phrase ‘as a result of past events’ in the definitions of an asset and a liability. Moreover, by identifying the past event, an entity can determine how to report that event in its financial statements; for example, how to classify and present income, expenses or cash flows arising from that event. Paragraphs BC4.64–BC4.68 discuss why the phrase ‘as a result of past events’ is particularly important to the revised definition of a liability. Hence, the Board retained that phrase in the definitions.

BC4.18 If a past event created an asset or liability, that fact alone does not confirm that the asset or liability still exists: it is also necessary to consider whether the entity still controls a present economic resource or is still bound by a present obligation. Thus, the Board also retained the reference to ‘present’ in the definition of a liability and added it to the definition of an asset. That addition emphasises the parallels between the two definitions.

Testing of revised definitions

BC4.19 In 2016, the Board analysed the effects of changes to the definitions of an asset and a liability proposed in the 2015 Exposure Draft. This exercise had two objectives:

- (a) to enable both the Board and stakeholders to assess implications of the proposals for future Standards; and
- (b) to help to identify any problems with the proposed definitions and supporting guidance.

BC4.20 This exercise involved:

- (a) analysing the outcome of applying the proposed definitions and supporting guidance to 23 illustrative examples;
- (b) identifying ways in which the proposed definitions and supporting guidance could help the Board to reach decisions in some of its current projects; and
- (c) discussing the illustrative examples with participants at the meeting of World Standard-setters in September 2016.

BC4.21 The examples were selected and developed to examine questions raised by respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft. These examples included rights and obligations that meet the definitions of an asset or a liability but have a low probability of inflows or outflows of economic benefits or have highly uncertain outcomes. The analysis of those examples explained not only why an asset or liability exists, but also why, applying the recognition criteria in Chapter 5, that asset or liability would not necessarily be recognised in the financial statements. The examples also included transactions for which respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft thought the implications of the proposed definitions and supporting guidance were unclear and were possibly inconsistent with requirements in Standards. The analysis of those examples illustrated how and why applying the proposed definitions and supporting guidance could, in many cases, lead to conclusions consistent with the requirements in the Standards.

BC4.22 Feedback from the participants at the World Standards-setters meeting in September 2016 highlighted a few areas in which the wording of the proposed guidance was not sufficiently clear. In developing the revised definitions and supporting guidance, the Board considered this feedback together with other feedback received on the proposals.

Definition of an asset

BC4.23 This section discusses the following aspects of the definition of an asset:

- (a) economic resource (see paragraphs BC4.24–BC4.27);
- (b) focus on rights (see paragraphs BC4.28–BC4.39); and
- (c) control (see paragraphs BC4.40–BC4.43).

Economic resource (paragraphs 4.4 and 4.14–4.18)

BC4.24 Paragraphs BC4.6–BC4.7 explain the Board’s decision to introduce a separate definition of an economic resource and paragraphs BC4.8–BC4.14 discuss the Board’s decision to remove the notion of expected flows from the definition of an asset and not to include that notion in the definition of an economic resource.

BC4.25 The Board concluded that the definition of an asset should refer to the economic resource, not to the resulting economic benefits. Although an asset derives its value from its potential to produce future economic benefits, what the entity controls is the present right that contains that potential. The entity does not control the future economic benefits.

BC4.26 The Board considered whether to use the term ‘resource’ instead of ‘economic resource’. Some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper suggested that the term ‘economic resource’ is too limiting and would cover only resources that have a market value. The Board intended that the term ‘economic resource’ cover all resources that have the potential to produce economic benefits rather than be limited to resources for which a market currently exists. The Board chose the term ‘economic resource’ because it helps to emphasise that the resource in question is not, for example, a physical object, but rights over a physical object, as discussed in paragraphs 4.11–4.12 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

BC4.27 In some jurisdictions, the Board’s *Conceptual Framework* is applied in the public sector and in other settings outside the financial markets, including the not-for-profit sector. Consequently, some stakeholders stated that the definition of an asset should include resources that produce benefits other than cash flows, for example, social or environmental services or benefits to the reporting entity, to other parties or to wider society. Similarly, the definition of a liability should, some stakeholders suggested, include obligations to transfer such benefits as well as obligations entered into for prudential or moral purposes, to meet expectations of a broader group of stakeholders or to maintain public support. However, the Board focuses currently on for-profit entities, and, therefore, concluded that the definition of an asset should continue to focus on resources that have the potential to produce economic benefits and that the definition of a liability should continue to focus on obligations to transfer an economic resource.

Focus on rights (paragraphs 4.6–4.13)

BC4.28 Prior to the publication of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the definition of an asset included the term ‘resource’. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* uses the term ‘economic resource’ and defines an economic resource and, hence, an asset as a right. To illustrate the effect of this change in emphasis, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that, for a physical object, such as an item of property, plant and equipment, the economic resource is not the physical object but a set of rights over that object. Examples of such rights are listed in paragraph 4.11.

BC4.29 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered a suggestion made by some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper and a few respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft that an asset should be defined as a right or resource, not merely as a right. These respondents argued that:

- (a) some assets, for example, tangible assets, are best described as resources instead of rights. The concept of accounting for tangible assets as a set of rights is inconsistent with practice, they argued, especially when that concept is combined with the idea of ‘unbundling’ rights and recognising them as separate assets.
- (b) unless the *Conceptual Framework* explains what factors drive the identification of the unit of account, it would be difficult to explain consistently for a single asset comprising several rights whether to recognise that single asset as a whole or to recognise some of those rights separately.
- (c) a focus on rights within a larger set of rights would put more pressure on the recognition and derecognition criteria and the unit of account. Entities would need to ask themselves numerous questions in order to confirm whether new assets or liabilities exist, without providing any clear benefit to users of financial statements. These respondents argued that the rights approach has caused challenges in developing Standards and also in applying them, particularly in relation to derecognition decisions.

BC4.30 The Board noted that many assets are rights that are established by contract, legislation or similar means, for example, financial assets, a lessee’s rights of use of a leased machine, and many intangible assets, such as patents. It is equally true that ownership of a physical object arises because of rights conferred by law. Furthermore, although they differ in extent, the rights conferred by full legal ownership of a physical object and by a contract to use an object for 99% (or 50% or even 1%) of its useful life are all rights of one kind or another. In addition, because of legal differences or changes, a particular set of rights may constitute full legal ownership in one jurisdiction but not in another jurisdiction, or at one date but not at another date.

BC4.31 Hence, the Board saw no advantage in defining two separate types of asset, one described in financial statements as a resource (for example, in cases of full legal ownership of a physical object) and the other described as a right (all other rights over all or part of a resource). Nevertheless, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* notes in paragraph 4.12 that describing the set of rights as the physical object will often provide a faithful representation of those rights in the most concise and understandable way.

Goodwill

BC4.32 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board did not reconsider the conclusions in paragraphs BC313–BC323 of the Basis for Conclusions on IFRS 3 *Business Combinations*. Those paragraphs explain what constitutes ‘core’ goodwill and state that core goodwill meets the definition of an asset.

BC4.33 In finalising the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board concluded that including in the *Conceptual Framework* a reference to one particular asset—goodwill—was not appropriate. Accordingly, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not mention goodwill.

Identifiability and separability

BC4.34 IAS 38 *Intangible Assets* requires an intangible asset to be identifiable, so as to distinguish it from goodwill. IAS 38 states that an asset is identifiable if it either is separable from the entity, or arises from contractual or other legal rights. Therefore, in developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board discussed whether the definition of an asset should require an asset to be identifiable and whether that definition should require an asset to be separable. The Board concluded that if an asset is separable or arises from contractual or other legal rights, it is likely to be easier to identify, measure and describe the asset. This may affect whether recognising the asset would provide relevant information and whether it is possible to

represent it faithfully. However, the Board concluded that identifiability and separability should not form part of the definition of an asset.

Other sources of value

- BC4.35 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board discussed items, such as know-how, that an entity obtains in ways other than by contract, legislation and similar means. The Board concluded that such items can be assets. It considered whether the term 'right' was broad enough to capture such items, or whether the Board should instead define an economic resource by reference to a 'right or other source of value'.
- BC4.36 The Board concluded that the notion of 'other sources of value' was too vague to be useful in a formal definition. Instead, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that the term 'right' captures not merely rights obtained by contract, legislation and similar means, but also rights obtained in other ways, for example, by acquiring or creating know-how that is not in the public domain. Paragraph 4.22 further explains why the entity could control the right to use such know-how even if that know-how is not protected by a registered patent. This explanation of the concept is not new—it builds on material in paragraph 4.12 of the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*.

Goods or services that are immediately consumed (paragraph 4.8)

- BC4.37 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* clarifies that goods or services that are received and immediately consumed create a momentary right to obtain the economic benefits produced by those goods or services. That right exists momentarily until the goods or services are consumed, at which point the consumption is recognised as an expense. This is consistent with IFRS 2 *Share-based Payment*, which treats employees' services received as an asset that is immediately consumed.

Economic benefits available to all other parties (paragraph 4.9)

- BC4.38 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that if rights are available to all other parties without significant cost, those rights are typically not assets for the entities that hold them. The Board included this explanation in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to clarify that defining an asset as a right would not compel entities to identify and recognise as assets their holdings of a possibly large array of rights.
- BC4.39 There are various ways to explain why rights available to all other parties are typically not assets of a particular entity. One reason could be that such rights, for example, public rights of way over land, do not have a potential to produce for that entity economic benefits beyond those available to all other parties. An alternative or additional reason could be that such rights are not controlled by the entity—the entity cannot deny other parties access to any economic benefits that may flow from those rights.

Control (paragraphs 4.19–4.25)

- BC4.40 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* kept in the definition of an asset the requirement for the economic resource to be 'controlled by the entity'. It also introduced a definition of control. The Board built that definition on the definitions of control in IFRS 15 *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*, which defines control of an asset, and in IFRS 10 *Consolidated Financial Statements*, which defines control of an entity.¹⁹ Although the definitions in these Standards differ, they are based on the same basic concepts—that the entity has the ability to direct the use of the asset (or of the entity) and to obtain economic benefits (or returns). The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* uses the concept of control both in the definition of an asset and in its description of a parent's control of its subsidiaries.

19 See paragraph 33 of IFRS 15 and paragraphs 5–7 of IFRS 10.

Risks and rewards of ownership

BC4.41 The Board considered whether the definition of an asset should incorporate the notion of exposure to risks and rewards of ownership. Some Standards identify that exposure (or the related notion of exposure to variable returns) as either an aspect of control or an indicator of control:

- (a) IFRS 10 states that ‘an investor controls an investee when it is exposed, or has rights, to variable returns from its involvement with the investee and has the ability to affect those returns through its power over the investee’.
- (b) IFRS 15 states that one of the indicators that control of an asset has been transferred to a customer is that ‘the customer has the significant risks and rewards of ownership of the asset’. The Basis for Conclusions on IFRS 15 explains that exposure to the risks and rewards of ownership of an asset may indicate control.

BC4.42 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains in general terms the relationship between control and exposure to the risks and rewards of ownership. However, instead of using the phrase ‘risks and rewards of ownership’, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers to ‘exposure to significant variations in the amount of economic benefits’ (see paragraph 4.24).

Rejected suggestions

BC4.43 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered and rejected other suggested changes to the definition and treatment of control:

- (a) a suggestion to exclude a reference to control from the definition of an asset because it is implicit in the definition of an economic resource as a right that the entity controls the resource. The Board agreed that this is implicit in the definition of an economic resource but decided that explicitly referring to control is a helpful way of structuring the definition and supporting guidance.
- (b) a suggestion that the requirement for control to exist should be a recognition criterion, instead of part of the definition of an asset. A few stakeholders argued that this approach would separate two questions that are independent of each other (namely: does an asset exist? and to whom does the asset belong?). The Board did not move the reference to control into the asset recognition criteria because such a move would be unlikely to change which assets would be recognised and because the Board has identified no problems in practice that would be addressed by such a move.
- (c) a suggestion that the Board should amend the definition of control to refer to ‘substantially all’ economic benefits. The Board noted that the reference to ‘substantially all’ economic benefits would be redundant, and possibly confusing, if an entity recognises only the rights it controls. For example, if an entity controls the right to obtain 20% of the economic benefits from a building, its asset is the right to obtain 20% of the economic benefits from the building. The entity would not need the right to obtain all, or even substantially all, the economic benefits from the building because its asset is not a right over the whole building. The question of whether to include a threshold such as ‘substantially all’ may arise when developing Standards, for example, if a Standard requires an entity to account for a group of rights as a single asset (a single unit of account).

Definition of a liability (paragraphs 4.26–4.47)

BC4.44 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* defines a liability as a present obligation of the entity to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events. The main changes from the previous definition are as follows:

- (a) deletion of the reference to an expected outflow of economic benefits. For reasons discussed in paragraphs BC4.8–BC4.14, that reference was replaced by supporting guidance explaining that an obligation to transfer an economic resource must have the potential to require the entity to transfer an economic resource to another party (see paragraph 4.37).
- (b) replacement of the phrase ‘resources embodying economic benefits’ with the new defined term ‘economic resource’ (see paragraphs BC4.6–BC4.7).

BC4.45 As mentioned in paragraph BC0.15, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not address classification of financial instruments with characteristics of both liabilities and equity. The Board is exploring how to distinguish liabilities from equity in its research project on Financial Instruments with Characteristics of Equity. If necessary, the *Conceptual Framework* will be updated as one possible outcome of that project. In finalising the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board sought not to add new concepts and new guidance that it may need to revisit after that research project.

BC4.46 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board concluded that for a liability to exist, three criteria must all be satisfied:

- (a) the entity has an obligation (see paragraphs BC4.47–BC4.61);
- (b) the obligation is to transfer an economic resource (see paragraphs BC4.62–BC4.63); and
- (c) the obligation is a present obligation that exists as a result of past events (see paragraphs BC4.64–BC4.68).

Obligation (paragraphs 4.28–4.35)

BC4.47 In applying the previous definition of a liability, it was generally accepted that an entity has a present obligation to transfer an economic resource when that obligation is unconditional and legally enforceable—in such situations, the entity clearly has no ability to avoid the transfer. However, in some other situations an entity has some limited ability to avoid a future transfer. Both in developing Standards and in applying them, problems had arisen because it was unclear how limited that ability must be for an entity to have a ‘present obligation’.

BC4.48 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* defines an obligation as a duty or responsibility, as did the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. However, to clarify the meaning of the term ‘obligation’, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that an entity has an obligation if it has a duty or responsibility that it has no practical ability to avoid.

No practical ability to avoid (paragraphs 4.29–4.34)

BC4.49 The Board developed the ‘no practical ability to avoid’ criterion by considering the problems arising when:

- (a) an entity does not have a legally enforceable obligation to transfer an economic resource, but its ability to avoid the transfer is limited by its customary practices, published policies or specific statements (such obligations are sometimes referred to as ‘constructive obligations’); or
- (b) a requirement already exists for an entity to transfer an economic resource, but the outcome of that requirement is conditional on the action that the entity itself may take.

BC4.50 Although the 2013 Discussion Paper considered those two situations separately, some respondents noted that the underlying issues are similar in both situations—the entity’s ability to avoid a transfer is limited. In the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the ‘no practical ability to avoid’ criterion applies in both situations. However, the factors used to assess whether an entity has the practical ability to avoid a particular transfer would depend on the nature of the entity’s duty or responsibility and would be considered when developing Standards.

BC4.51 Different Standards required different approaches to situations in which an entity can avoid a transfer of economic resources through its future action. The Board identified three views applied at that time in Standards to determine when a present obligation to transfer an economic resource has arisen:

- (a) View 1—an entity must have no ability to avoid the future transfer. For example, IAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*, as it had been interpreted in IFRIC 21 *Levies*, required that for a present obligation to exist, the entity must have no ability, even in theory, to avoid the future transfer.
- (b) View 2—an entity must have no practical ability to avoid the future transfer. For example, IAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting* specified that, if a lease provides for variable lease payments based on the entity achieving a specified level of annual sales, an obligation can arise before that level has been achieved if that level is expected to be achieved and the entity therefore has no realistic alternative but to make the future lease payments.
- (c) View 3—there need be no limits on an entity's ability to avoid the future transfer. It is sufficient that, as a consequence of a past event, the entity may have to transfer an economic resource if further conditions are met. For example, IAS 19 *Employee Benefits* required a liability to be recognised for benefits that are conditional on future employment (unvested benefits) if those benefits are given in exchange for service already provided by employees. IAS 19 did not require an entity to assess whether it has the practical ability to avoid paying those benefits.

BC4.52 In the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board adopted View 2 for the following reasons:

- (a) the Board rejected View 1 because when an entity has the theoretical ability to avoid transferring an economic resource but no practical ability to avoid that transfer, omitting from a list of the entity's obligations the requirement to make that transfer would exclude information that many users of financial statements would find useful. That omission would place too much emphasis on legal form and not enough weight on faithfully representing the substance of obligations that are, in practice, as binding as obligations that are legally enforceable. Moreover, if an entity has a theoretical right to take action that would avoid an obligation, but has no practical ability to exercise that right, that obligation binds the entity as effectively as if it did not have that theoretical right.
- (b) the Board rejected View 3 because the term 'obligation' implies some limit on the entity's ability to avoid the transfer of an economic resource.

BC4.53 The Board rejected a suggestion made by several stakeholders to apply a threshold based on the probability of future outflows. Those respondents suggested that an entity should be regarded as having an obligation if it were probable or, perhaps, reasonably certain that the entity would transfer an economic resource. They argued that such a threshold would provide the most relevant measure of the expenses in the period. Nevertheless, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the definition of a liability focuses on the existence of an obligation for the reasons set out in paragraphs BC4.9(a), BC4.52(b) and BC4.94(d). The supporting guidance focuses on what an entity is obliged to do—not on the likelihood of the possible outcomes.

Interpreting 'no practical ability to avoid'

BC4.54 The Board concluded that the factors used to assess whether an entity has the practical ability to avoid a particular transfer should depend on the nature of the entity's duty or responsibility. Applying the criterion of 'no practical ability to avoid' will require judgement. Some stakeholders were concerned that allowing preparers of financial statements to apply this criterion would lead to diverse practice and that in some circumstances entities would recognise a liability when, in the view of some of those stakeholders, the entity does not have a genuine obligation. However, the Board noted that preparers of financial statements will rarely be required to apply that criterion without further requirements and guidance. The Board will, if necessary, develop guidance on applying that criterion to particular cases as it develops Standards.

BC4.55 Paragraph 4.34 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers to actions that would have economic consequences significantly more adverse than a transfer of economic resources as an example of when an entity may have no practical ability to avoid a transfer. This is intended to mean not just that it would be economically advantageous to make the transfer. Rather, the adverse economic consequences of not making the transfer are so severe that the entity has no practical ability to avoid the transfer. Although the entity has the theoretical right to avoid the transfer, it has no practical ability to exercise that right.

Terminology

BC4.56 The Board considered whether phrases such as the following could be easier to interpret than ‘no practical ability to avoid’:

- (a) ‘no realistic alternative’; or
- (b) ‘little or no discretion (in practice) to avoid’.

BC4.57 These two phrases have a meaning similar to ‘no practical ability to avoid’. The Board chose the phrase ‘no practical ability to avoid’ because it most effectively conveys the need to identify what an entity is obliged to do, instead of focusing on the probable outcome. Furthermore, it mirrors the term ‘practical ability’, which is applied in some Standards in assessing whether an entity controls an asset, and the term ‘present ability’ used for a similar purpose in paragraphs 4.20 and 4.22 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

BC4.58 Some Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* use the term ‘constructive obligation’ to refer to some circumstances that give rise to an obligation or the term ‘economic compulsion’ to refer to some circumstances that give rise to no obligation. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not use those terms to distinguish circumstances when an obligation exists from circumstances when an obligation does not exist because the Board concluded that those terms have not proved helpful for that purpose and are not necessary.

An obligation for one party is a right for another party

BC4.59 Paragraph 4.30 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that if one party has an obligation to transfer an economic resource, it follows that another party (or parties) has a right to receive that economic resource. The Board decided that this statement would help entities to apply the definition of a liability because it may sometimes be easier to identify whether that other party (or parties) has a right than to identify whether the first party has an obligation.

BC4.60 The Board considered whether another party has any asset that it controls if the reporting entity’s obligation is not legally enforceable but arises from the reporting entity’s customary practices, published policies or specific statements, or is conditional on the entity’s own future actions. The Board concluded that the counterparty does control an asset in such cases. According to paragraph 4.23, if an entity is the party that will obtain economic benefits produced by an economic resource, that entity controls the economic resource.

BC4.61 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board discussed whether environmental obligations are an exception to the general principle that for every obligation, a corresponding right to receive the economic resource exists. It concluded that in the case of such obligations a corresponding right is controlled by society at large—the people living in the area. They have the right to receive the services required to restore their environment. Therefore, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies no exception to the general principle.

Transfer of an economic resource (paragraphs 4.36–4.41)

BC4.62 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that the second criterion for a liability is that the obligation must have the potential to require the entity to transfer an economic resource. Paragraphs BC4.8–BC4.14 explain why the Board replaced the notion that an outflow of resources is expected with the concept that a liability has the potential to require a transfer of an economic resource.

BC4.63 An obligation to transfer an economic resource if a specified uncertain future event occurs has the potential to require a transfer of an economic resource and hence can give rise to a liability. That would be the case if the obligation is a present obligation that has arisen as a result of the past events discussed in paragraphs BC4.64–BC4.68. Such obligations are sometimes referred to as ‘stand-ready obligations’. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not use that term because the Board considered it unnecessary.

Present obligation as a result of past events (paragraphs 4.42–4.47)

BC4.64 The definition of a liability in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* required a present obligation to be the result of past events but did not specify how to identify which event results in creation of a present obligation (sometimes referred to as the ‘obligating event’). The 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, however, explains how to interpret the phrase ‘as a result of past events’.

BC4.65 Some obligations arise from a single obligating event, for example, receiving goods. Other obligations build up over time through a continuous obligating event, for example, conducting a continuous activity.

BC4.66 In some cases, a chain of events creates an obligation. For example, an obligation may arise if a minimum threshold is reached in a period (such as a minimum amount of revenue, a minimum number of employees or a minimum amount of assets) and if the reporting entity is still operating on a specified later date. In such cases, identifying which of those events (reaching the threshold or operating on the specified date) is the obligating event can be particularly difficult. If the definition of obligations encompassed only unconditional obligations (View 1 discussed in paragraph BC4.51(a)), the explicit reference to a past event would, arguably, have been redundant. That is because under View 1 the obligating event would be the event that makes the obligation unconditional. In the example given in this paragraph that event is operating on the specified later date.

BC4.67 However, the Board adopted a broader ‘no practical ability to avoid’ approach (View 2 discussed in paragraph BC4.51(b)). Applying this concept, an entity may have an obligation if only some of the events in the chain have occurred: an entity could have an obligation if it has no practical ability to avoid the events that have not yet occurred. Therefore, it is important to explain which of the events in the chain must have occurred for an entity to have a present obligation ‘as a result of past events’.

BC4.68 The Board concluded that the concept ‘as a result of past events’ means that:

- (a) an entity has obtained economic benefits or taken an action.
- (b) as a consequence, the entity will or may have to transfer an economic resource that it would not otherwise have had to transfer. The activity increases the magnitude of the economic resources that the entity will or may have to transfer.

Assets and liabilities

Non-reciprocal transactions

BC4.69 The Board considered whether the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* should explicitly discuss assets and liabilities that arise in non-reciprocal transactions, for example, donations, income taxes and other taxes and levies. It noted that the guidance in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* had been developed without assuming that all transactions are reciprocal exchanges. Indeed, some guidance—in particular, the guidance supporting the liability definition—was developed with significant thought given to non-reciprocal transactions.

BC4.70 The Board concluded that its guidance supporting the definitions of an asset and a liability is equally suitable for reciprocal exchange transactions and non-reciprocal transactions. In both cases, the starting point is to identify the rights and obligations arising from the transaction. Therefore, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not contain guidance that specifically addresses non-reciprocal transactions.

Contingent liabilities and contingent assets

BC4.71 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not use the terms ‘contingent liability’ and ‘contingent asset’. In IAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*, developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the term ‘contingent liability’ is used as a collective label encompassing three categories of items that fail to meet that Standard’s recognition criteria:

- (a) the first category is possible obligations whose existence is uncertain and will be confirmed only by the occurrence or non-occurrence of uncertain future events not wholly within the control of the entity. Paragraphs 4.35 and 5.14 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* analyse such items as cases of existence uncertainty—it is uncertain whether a liability exists.
- (b) the second category is present obligations that arise from past events but are not recognised because it is not probable that an outflow of economic resources will be required to settle them. Paragraphs 4.37–4.38 and 5.15–5.17 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* analyse these items as cases of liabilities with a low probability of an outflow of economic benefits.
- (c) the last category is present obligations that arise from past events but are not recognised because their amount cannot be measured with sufficient reliability. Paragraphs 2.19, 2.22 and 5.19–5.23 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* analyse these items as cases of liabilities that are subject to a high level of measurement uncertainty.

BC4.72 The term ‘contingent liability’ is not used in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* because:

- (a) the three categories of item encompassed by the IAS 37 definition do not form a single natural class. The items in category (a) may be liabilities but are subject to existence uncertainty. The items in categories (b) and (c) are liabilities but might or might not be recognised after applying the recognition criteria described in Chapter 5—*Recognition and derecognition*.
- (b) contingent liabilities are not a further element of financial statements, additional to liabilities and equity. Moreover, some ‘contingent liabilities’ are liabilities, but others are not.
- (c) in common usage, the term ‘contingent liability’ is not used in the same way as in IAS 37. It often refers to an item that may give rise to an outflow of economic resources if some uncertain future event occurs. Depending on the circumstances, an obligating event might or might not have occurred. If an obligating event has occurred, the item might be a liability subject to existence uncertainty, outcome uncertainty, measurement uncertainty or any combination of those uncertainties. The liability might be recognised or unrecognised.

BC4.73 Similar considerations apply for ‘contingent assets’.

Unit of account (paragraphs 4.48–4.55)

BC4.74 It would be impossible to set out recognition requirements or a measurement basis for a particular item without selecting a unit of account to which those requirements apply. Likewise, selecting a unit of account without considering how recognition or measurement requirements would apply may not result in useful information. Therefore, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that the unit of account and recognition and measurement requirements for a particular item are all considered at the same time.

BC4.75 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether the unit of account for recognition could differ from the unit of account for measurement. In the Board's view, it is possible for items to qualify for recognition on an individual basis and to be measured on a group basis. For example, a collection of items qualifying for recognition on an individual basis:

- (a) could be measured as a single unit of account when estimating their recoverable amount; or
- (b) may sometimes, as a practical expedient, be measured as a portfolio.

Hence, the Board concluded that sometimes it might be appropriate to select one unit of account for recognition and a different unit of account for measurement.

BC4.76 Decisions about the unit of account are linked to decisions about recognition and measurement that are made in developing Standards. Hence, the Board concluded that decisions about selecting a unit of account will need to be made in developing Standards, not in the *Conceptual Framework*.

BC4.77 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* includes a discussion of the factors to consider when determining which unit of account to use. The Board did not rank the factors by priority because their relative importance depends on the specific features of the item for which the entity is accounting. In the Board's view, no single ranking could be used to determine the most useful unit of account consistently for a broad range of Standards.

Executory contracts (paragraphs 4.56–4.58)

BC4.78 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* provides revised and more extensive supporting guidance on executory contracts. It clarifies that:

- (a) an executory contract establishes a combined right and obligation to exchange economic resources;
- (b) that combined right and obligation to exchange economic resources are interdependent and cannot be separated; and
- (c) the combined right and obligation constitute a single asset or liability.

BC4.79 Although some stakeholders expressed a view that executory contracts give rise to a right (to receive one economic resource) and a separate obligation (to transfer a second economic resource), the Board noted that the right and obligation are highly interdependent: the right to receive the first resource is conditional on fulfilling the obligation to transfer the second resource and the obligation to transfer the second resource is conditional on receiving the first resource.

BC4.80 The Board further noted that even if the parties transfer economic resources at different times, a simultaneous exchange occurs at the time of the first transfer. For example, an entity might have a contract to sell goods to a customer and receive payment from the customer at a later date. When the entity transfers the goods to the customer, it simultaneously receives a right to receive payment from the customer. At that time, the customer receives the goods and incurs an obligation to pay for them. Each party's combined right and obligation to exchange economic resources is satisfied at the time of the first transfer and replaced at that time by a new right (in this example to receive payment) or obligation (in this example to make payment).

BC4.81 The Board therefore concluded that an executory contract contains a combined right and obligation to exchange economic resources, not a right to receive one economic resource and a separate obligation to transfer another economic resource.

BC4.82 The Board considered whether the combined right and obligation to exchange economic resources could give a reporting entity both a separate asset (a right to exchange resources, equivalent to a purchased option) and a separate liability (the obligation to exchange resources, equivalent to a written option).

- BC4.83 A purchased option to exchange economic resources gives the holder the right either to make an exchange or to withdraw from the exchange without penalty. Conversely, the issuer of the written option undertakes the obligation to make the exchange, if the holder exercises its right. However, if an entity is both the holder of a purchased option and the issuer of an identical written option for the same underlying exchange of economic resources:
- (a) the entity's right under its purchased option to withdraw from the exchange is nullified by its obligation to exchange if the counterparty exercises its right under the entity's written option; and
 - (b) the counterparty's right under the entity's written option to withdraw from the exchange is nullified by its obligation to exchange if the entity exercises its right under its purchased option.
- BC4.84 Consequently, if an entity is both the holder of a purchased option and the issuer of a written option for the same underlying exchange on the same terms, neither party has the right to avoid exchanging economic resources. It follows that for an executory contract, the terms of the contract provide for only one outcome—the exchange will occur unless both parties agree to terminate the contract. Moreover, the entity's right and obligation to exchange economic resources are so interdependent that they cannot be separated. Hence, the contract cannot be separated into more than a single asset or liability. If the exchange is on terms that are currently favourable to the reporting entity, the contract is an asset; if it is on terms that are currently unfavourable, it is a liability.
- BC4.85 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft asked how the Board's conclusion on executory contracts could affect the treatment of assets and liabilities arising in a lease contract or could affect trade date accounting for financial assets:
- (a) as explained in the Basis for Conclusions on IFRS 16 *Leases*, at the commencement date, a lessee has obtained the right to use an underlying asset for a period of time and the lessor has delivered that right by making the asset available for use by the lessee. Once the lessor has performed its obligation to deliver that right, the lease contract is no longer an executory contract. The lessee controls the right-of-use asset and has a liability for the lease payments.
 - (b) IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* permits 'trade date accounting' for a 'regular way' purchase or sale of a financial asset. Trade date accounting treats the financial asset as having already been delivered at the commitment (trade) date, instead of accounting for the purchase or sale contract as a derivative until settlement. IFRS 9 permits trade date accounting as a simple and practical method of managing and recording transactions that have only a short duration. In other words, permitting this method results from considering the cost constraint—from considering the relative costs and benefits of trade date accounting and settlement date accounting (the other method permitted by IFRS 9).
- BC4.86 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not specifically discuss recognition of executory contract assets and liabilities because it does not set out specific recognition requirements for any other types of assets and liabilities. The Board will set recognition requirements for executory contracts in developing Standards in the same way it sets recognition requirements for other assets and liabilities.
- BC4.87 In the light of stakeholders' concerns, the Board considered whether the revised concepts on executory contracts could result in more assets and liabilities arising from executory contracts being recognised. In many cases in current practice, an asset or liability is not recognised for an executory contract. The Board expects that this will continue to be so. The same measurement considerations that apply to all other assets and liabilities (see Chapter 6—*Measurement*) apply also to the single asset or liability that arises from an executory contract. When a historical cost measurement basis is applied to an executory contract, the contract is typically measured at zero (which has the same practical effect as not recognising the contract) unless it is onerous. For example, the historical cost of an executory contract for the purchase of inventories is zero (assuming no transaction costs) unless the contract is onerous.

Reporting the substance of contractual rights and obligations (paragraphs 4.59–4.62)

BC4.88 As explained in paragraph 2.12, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explicitly states that, to provide a faithful representation of an economic phenomenon, an entity should report the substance of that phenomenon. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* includes concepts for reporting the substance of contractual rights and contractual obligations. Those concepts drew on concepts developed by the Board in standard-setting projects. The Board decided that including the underlying concepts in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* would help to ensure that these concepts are applied more consistently in Standards.

Definition of equity (paragraphs 4.63–4.67)

BC4.89 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* continues:

- (a) to make a binary distinction between liabilities and equity;
- (b) to define equity as the residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities; and
- (c) not to discuss what forms of presentation and disclosure are appropriate if an entity's equity comprises different classes of equity claims and different components of equity (see paragraphs 7.12–7.13).

BC4.90 The Board considered whether continuing to make a binary distinction between liabilities and equity is sufficient to provide users of financial statements with useful information about claims against the entity. The inherent limitation of a binary distinction between liabilities and equity is that it attempts to make a single distinction between claims that have various characteristics in varying degrees. Eliminating that binary distinction and defining a single element for all claims would allow the accounting for each type of claim to be determined individually to depict its specific characteristics. However, unless all claims are measured directly, any approach would need to identify at least one residual class of claim that would be measured indirectly by reference to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities. Moreover, it is not possible to measure all claims directly without valuing the entire entity, which goes beyond the stated objective of general purpose financial reports. Thus, dividing claims into at least two classes is unavoidable.

BC4.91 Some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper suggested that defining equity directly and introducing another element (a third class of claim) may better depict claims that have some characteristics of both liabilities and equity. However, the Board concluded that introducing another element would make the classification and resulting accounting more complex. In addition, it would be necessary to determine whether changes in this third class of claim should meet the definition of income or expenses. An outcome similar to introducing a new element could instead be achieved by separately presenting different classes within liabilities or within equity.

BC4.92 The Board will further explore how to distinguish liabilities from equity in its research project on Financial Instruments with Characteristics of Equity. That research project:

- (a) will consider approaches to distinguishing liabilities from equity, including approaches that could require changes to the definitions of a liability or equity in the *Conceptual Framework*. The Board will use the output from that project when it decides, in due course, whether to add to its active agenda a project to amend the relevant Standards, the *Conceptual Framework*, or both. Any decision to start an active project would require the Board to go through its due process for adding a project to its agenda.
- (b) is unlikely to result in changes to the supporting guidance in paragraphs 4.28–4.35 that focuses on identifying whether the reporting entity has an obligation to transfer an economic resource. That guidance was not designed to help to distinguish liabilities from equity (see paragraph BC4.45).

Definitions of income and expenses (paragraphs 4.68–4.72)

Income and expenses defined in terms of changes in assets and liabilities

BC4.93 The 2010 *Conceptual Framework* defined income and expenses in terms of changes in assets and liabilities. A few respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper questioned this approach. They argued that it gives undue primacy to the statement of financial position over the statement(s) of financial performance and insufficiently acknowledges the importance of accounting for transactions in the statement(s) of financial performance or of matching income and expenses.

BC4.94 The Board disagreed with these arguments, concluding that:

- (a) it is incorrect to assume that the Board focuses solely or primarily on the statement of financial position. Financial statements are intended to provide information about an entity's financial position and its financial performance (see paragraph 3.3). Hence, when making decisions about recognition, measurement and presentation and disclosure, the Board considers whether the resulting information provides useful information about both an entity's financial position and its financial performance. The Board has not designated one type of information—about financial position or about financial performance—as the primary focus of financial reporting.
- (b) information about transactions is relevant to users of financial statements. Hence, much of financial reporting is currently based on transactions and will continue to be so.
- (c) transactions that result in income and expenses also cause changes in assets and liabilities. Consequently, identifying income and expenses necessarily leads to identifying which assets and liabilities have changed. The Board and other standard-setters have found over many years that it is more effective, efficient and rigorous to define assets and liabilities first and to define income and expenses as changes in assets and liabilities, instead of trying to define income and expenses first and then describe assets and liabilities as by-products of the recognition of income and expenses.
- (d) the definitions of an asset and a liability are not merely accounting technicalities. They refer to real economic phenomena (economic resources and obligations to transfer economic resources). A statement of financial position depicting assets, liabilities and equity provides users with more relevant and understandable information about an entity's financial position than does a mere summary of amounts that have arisen as by-products of a matching process. Those amounts do not necessarily depict economic phenomena.
- (e) an approach based on matching income and expenses does not define the period to which the income and expenses relate. As explained in paragraph 5.5 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, if income and expenses relate to each other, they will often be recognised simultaneously because of simultaneous changes in related assets and liabilities. However, an intention to match income and expenses does not justify the recognition in the statement of financial position of items that do not meet the definitions of an asset or a liability.

BC4.95 The Board noted that no major problems had been identified with the definitions of income and expenses. Hence, the only changes made in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* were those necessary to make the definitions of income and expenses consistent with the revised definitions of an asset and a liability.

Types of income and expenses

BC4.96 Much of the discussion of income and expenses in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* related to their presentation and disclosure. Presentation and disclosure are discussed in Chapter 7—*Presentation and disclosure* of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The rest of the discussion in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* referred to various types of income and expenses, for example, revenue, gains and losses. That material was not included in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The material was originally included to emphasise that income includes revenue and gains and that expenses include losses. The Board decided that that emphasis is now unnecessary and the implication that the *Conceptual Framework* defines subclasses of income and expenses is unhelpful. The Board does not expect the removal of that material to cause any changes in practice.

Other possible definitions

BC4.97 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether to define as elements of financial statements contributions from holders of equity claims and distributions to holders of equity claims, and cash inflows and cash outflows. Because the Board concluded that the absence of such definitions had not caused major problems, it did not include such definitions in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 5—RECOGNITION AND DERECOGNITION

RECOGNITION	BC5.1
Relevance	BC5.12
Existence uncertainty	BC5.13
Low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits	BC5.15
Faithful representation	BC5.21
DERECOGNITION	BC5.23

Recognition (paragraphs 5.6–5.25)

- BC5.1 The recognition criteria in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* stated that an entity recognises an item that meets the definition of an element if:
- (a) it is probable that any future economic benefit associated with the item will flow to or from the entity; and
 - (b) the item has a cost or value that can be measured with reliability.
- BC5.2 The recognition criteria created the following problems:
- (a) some Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* applied a probability recognition criterion, but they did not use it consistently. They used different probability thresholds which included 'probable', 'more likely than not', 'virtually certain' and 'reasonably possible'.
 - (b) the application of the probability criterion to some recognition questions could lead to loss of relevant information or a misleading representation of the entity's financial position or financial performance. For example, applying the criterion could prevent the recognition of some derivative financial instruments. Moreover, it could result in a gain being recognised for a transaction when no economic gain has occurred. For example, suppose that, in exchange for receiving cash, an entity incurs a liability to pay a fixed amount if some unlikely event occurs in the future. If the liability is not recognised because an outflow of economic benefits is not considered probable when the entity receives the cash, the entity will recognise an immediate gain at that time. To avoid such problems, some Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, for example, IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments*, applied no probability recognition criterion.
 - (c) the reference to reliability was unclear and could result in inappropriate outcomes. Although reliability was identified as a qualitative characteristic in the 1989 *Framework*, in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*, the term 'reliability' was no longer used to refer to a qualitative characteristic and was not defined (see paragraphs BC2.21–BC2.31). In practice, a 'reliable' measure was usually interpreted as one with a tolerable level of measurement uncertainty and perhaps also as verifiable and free from error. Hence, a recognition criterion referring to reliable measurement could be interpreted as one prohibiting recognition of any item that has a high level of measurement uncertainty, even if recognising such an item would provide useful information.
- BC5.3 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that an asset or liability is recognised only if such recognition provides users of financial statements with useful information, namely:
- (a) relevant information about the asset or liability and about any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity; and
 - (b) a faithful representation of the asset or liability and of any resulting income, expenses or changes in equity.
- BC5.4 The approaches in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* and the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* have similar objectives but sought to achieve them by different means:
- (a) the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* set up practical, but subjective filters for cases where recognition is not likely to provide information with the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information. Those filters referred to probability and reliability.

- (b) the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers directly to the qualitative characteristics and then provides guidance on how to apply them. That guidance explains when recognition might produce information that lacks those qualitative characteristics—including some (but not necessarily all) cases where applying the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* might have led to a conclusion that a flow of economic benefits is not probable or that reliable measurement is not possible.
- BC5.5 The Board considered whether the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* should include a presumption (or overarching principle) that every item meeting the definition of an asset or a liability is recognised. This would have meant that if the Board had decided that recognition of a particular item would not provide useful information, it would have had to include an exception to this principle in particular Standards.
- BC5.6 The Board rejected that approach because it expects that in some circumstances it will continue to conclude that recognising particular assets or particular liabilities will not provide useful information or that the costs of recognising them would exceed the benefits of doing so. To be useful to the Board, the *Conceptual Framework* needs to give guidance on how to approach decisions about setting recognition requirements in Standards. A presumption or overarching principle that every item meeting the definition of an asset or a liability should be recognised would be too restrictive and would not provide such guidance.
- BC5.7 Some stakeholders expressed a concern that the approach now included in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* would not provide enough direction because it is too abstract and subjective. These stakeholders suggested that the Board needs more concrete and robust recognition criteria to ensure that it develops Standards with consistent requirements that result in useful information.
- BC5.8 In considering that concern, the Board noted that the 1989 *Framework* and the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* also set abstract and subjective criteria—probability and reliability. The revised approach in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* is linked directly to the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information and provides clearer and more developed guidance than the previous approach. In the Board’s view, setting more rigid recognition criteria in the *Conceptual Framework* would not help the Board to set recognition requirements in Standards that result in useful information to users of financial statements at a cost that does not exceed the benefits.
- BC5.9 Some stakeholders disagreed with the revised approach to recognition because they were concerned that it could increase the range of recognised assets and liabilities.
- BC5.10 In developing the revised recognition criteria, the Board aimed to develop tools that would help it to base decisions on a more coherent set of principles. It did not have an objective of either increasing or decreasing the range of assets and liabilities recognised. Paragraphs BC5.15–BC5.20 provide the Board’s responses to specific concerns in relation to situations when probability of inflows or outflows of economic benefits is low and paragraphs BC5.21–BC5.22 provide the Board’s responses to specific concerns in relation to measurement uncertainty.
- BC5.11 Further, the Board noted that, as explained in paragraph SP1.2 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the *Conceptual Framework* does not override requirements in Standards, so the 2018 revision of recognition criteria will not affect how preparers of financial statements apply recognition criteria developed in Standards issued before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

Relevance (paragraphs 5.12–5.17)

- BC5.12 The guidance supporting the revised recognition criteria provides examples of factors that may indicate when recognising an asset or liability may fail to provide users of financial statements with relevant information. Two of those factors relate to cases in which:
- (a) it is uncertain whether an asset or liability exists (see paragraphs BC5.13–BC5.14); or
- (b) an asset or liability exists, but the probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is low (see paragraphs BC5.15–BC5.20).

Existence uncertainty (paragraph 5.14)

- BC5.13 It is sometimes uncertain whether an asset or liability exists (existence uncertainty). The Board concluded that it is helpful to consider existence uncertainty separately from outcome uncertainty and separately from measurement uncertainty. Although existence uncertainty may contribute to outcome uncertainty and measurement uncertainty, conceptually it is different and could affect recognition decisions differently. Distinguishing different types of uncertainty makes it easier to decide what information is most likely to be relevant to users of financial statements and how to provide that information in a way that provides a faithful representation.
- BC5.14 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not provide detailed guidance on how to consider existence uncertainty in making recognition decisions because the appropriate approach will depend on facts and circumstances.

Low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits (paragraphs 5.15–5.17)

- BC5.15 Many respondents both to the 2013 Discussion Paper and to the 2015 Exposure Draft argued that the recognition criteria should continue to refer to probability. They argued that:
- (a) the probability criterion had proved to be a practical way of applying the qualitative characteristics. The proposed supporting guidance on items with a low probability of generating a flow of economic benefits was not clear enough and would lead to doubt and inconsistency.
 - (b) the removal of the probability criterion, in combination with the removal of the reference to 'expected' from the definitions of an asset and a liability, could lead to requirements for entities to recognise more assets and liabilities with a low probability of inflows or outflows of economic benefits. Recognising such assets and liabilities would not provide useful information. In addition, preparers of financial statements might have to search extensively for rights and obligations. (The deletion of the notion of an 'expected' flow is discussed in paragraphs BC4.8–BC4.14.)
 - (c) if assets and liabilities with a low probability of future inflows and outflows were recognised, they might have to be measured at amounts based on expected value. Such measurement is difficult and puts a burden on preparers of financial statements. Sometimes, providing information about the range and distribution of possible outcomes is more useful than providing a measure based on expected value. Such measures may provide an illusion of precision that does not exist.
- BC5.16 Some respondents suggested applying a probability filter for some assets or liabilities (for example, for patents or research and development), but not for all (for example, not for derivative financial assets), or for some transactions but not for others (for example, not for the acquisition of an asset for cash). Those respondents suggested it is not reasonable to remove the probability requirement from the recognition criteria simply to permit the recognition of some financial instruments. Including an exception for particular financial instruments in a Standard would be sufficient to achieve that result.
- BC5.17 The Board acknowledged that a probability threshold could be a practical way to filter out assets and liabilities whose recognition might not provide relevant information. However, this approach would lead to not recognising assets and liabilities in some cases when recognition could provide relevant information. It would also be difficult to set a probability threshold that could be applied across all Standards and in all recognition events.
- BC5.18 The Board also noted that, whatever measurement basis is used for an asset or liability with a low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits, that basis would be likely to reflect that low probability—it is unlikely that a required measurement basis would reflect only the maximum inflow or maximum outflow of economic benefits.

- BC5.19 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, therefore, does not include a probability threshold. Instead, the low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits is discussed as an indicator that, in some cases, recognition may not provide relevant information, for the reasons discussed in paragraphs 5.16–5.17.
- BC5.20 Some stakeholders expressed a concern that the term ‘low probability’ is too subjective to be interpreted consistently. However, the Board’s objective in discussing situations of low probability was to indicate that in some such situations, the Board might conclude that some information may not be relevant. The Board’s objective was not to identify a threshold above which information would always be relevant and below which it would always be irrelevant.

Faithful representation (paragraphs 5.18–5.25)

- BC5.21 As discussed in paragraphs BC5.2–BC5.4, the recognition criteria in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* do not include a requirement to recognise an asset or liability only if it has a cost or value that can be measured with reliability. The Board concluded that a high level of measurement uncertainty would not necessarily preclude a measure from providing useful information about an asset or liability, so it would be difficult to set a single threshold based on measurement uncertainty that could be applied across all Standards and in all recognition events. Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses measurement uncertainty as a factor that may affect whether faithful representation can be provided by recognition of an asset or liability, supported, if necessary, by explanatory information. This discussion is based on the discussion of measurement uncertainty in Chapter 2—*Qualitative characteristics of useful financial information* (see paragraphs 2.19, 2.22 and BC2.46–BC2.49).
- BC5.22 Some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper and to the 2015 Exposure Draft suggested that a higher level of measurement uncertainty is tolerable when recognising liabilities or expenses than when recognising assets or income. They described this as an application of prudence (asymmetric prudence, applying the terminology used in paragraph BC2.37). The Board concluded that the level of measurement uncertainty beyond which a measure does not provide a faithful representation depends on facts and circumstances and so can be determined only when developing Standards (see paragraph 5.9). Paragraphs BC2.44–BC2.45 provide further discussion of symmetry in decisions about recognition and measurement.

Derecognition (paragraphs 5.26–5.33)

- BC5.23 The 2010 *Conceptual Framework* did not define derecognition; nor did it describe when derecognition occurs.
- BC5.24 Discussions about derecognition have typically contrasted two approaches to derecognition:
- (a) a control approach—derecognition is the mirror image of recognition. Thus, an entity derecognises an asset or liability when it no longer meets the criteria for recognition (or no longer exists, or is no longer an asset or liability of the entity).
 - (b) a risks-and-rewards approach—an entity continues to recognise an asset or liability until the entity is no longer exposed to most of the risks and rewards generated by that asset or liability. This continued recognition would apply even if that asset or liability would not qualify for recognition at the date when the entity disposed of the transferred component, if at that date it acquired only the retained component and had not previously recognised the retained component.²⁰

²⁰ Paragraph 5.28 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains what is included in the transferred component and the retained component.

BC5.25 To address some apparent conflicts between the control approach and the risks-and-rewards approach, the Board explained in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* that:

- (a) if an entity has apparently transferred an asset but retains exposure to significant positive or negative variations in the amount of economic benefits that may be produced by the asset, this sometimes indicates that the entity might continue to control that asset; and
- (b) if an entity has transferred an asset to another party that holds the asset as an agent for the entity, the transferor still controls the asset.

BC5.26 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board concluded that accounting requirements for derecognition should aim to faithfully represent both:

- (a) any assets and liabilities retained after the transaction or other event that led to the derecognition (including any asset or liability acquired, incurred or created as part of the transaction or other event); and
- (b) the change in the entity's assets and liabilities as a result of that transaction or other event.

BC5.27 In the Board's view, the control approach focuses more on the aim described in paragraph BC5.26(a) and the risks-and-rewards approach focuses more on the aim described in paragraph BC5.26(b). If an entity transfers an entire asset or an entire liability and retains no exposure to that asset or liability, the control approach and the risks-and-rewards approach both lead to the same outcome. Moreover, in such cases, achieving both aims described in paragraph BC5.26 is straightforward.

BC5.28 In contrast, the Board has encountered difficulties in standard-setting when an entity transfers only part of an asset or liability or retains some exposure to variations. In those cases, the control approach does not always lead to the same outcome as the risks-and-rewards approach and the two aims described in paragraph BC5.26 sometimes conflict. The Board views both aims as valid. Accordingly, in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board did not specify the use of the control approach or the risks-and-rewards approach.

BC5.29 Instead, the Board adopted an approach that involves:

- (a) derecognising the transferred component.
- (b) continuing to recognise the retained component, if any.
- (c) applying one or more of the following procedures if necessary to achieve one or both of the aims described in paragraph BC5.26:
 - (i) present any retained component separately in the statement of financial position;
 - (ii) present separately in the statement(s) of financial performance any income and expenses recognised as a result of derecognition of the transferred component; and
 - (iii) provide explanatory information.
- (d) as a last resort, if derecognition of the transferred component is not sufficient to achieve both aims described in paragraph BC5.26 even when supported by separate presentation or by explanatory information, considering whether continuing to recognise the transferred component would achieve those aims. That continued recognition would need to be supported by separate presentation or explanatory information because financial statements would include as assets and liabilities, and as related income and expenses, items that do not meet the definition of an element of financial statements.

BC5.30 The Board considered whether the description of aims of accounting requirements for derecognition should explicitly refer to the qualitative characteristic of relevance in addition to the qualitative characteristic of faithful representation. The Board noted that the aims described in paragraph BC5.26 identify what economic phenomena need to be represented faithfully when derecognition is being considered. In the Board's view, information about those economic phenomena is what would be relevant to users of financial statements. Therefore, the Board concluded that adding an explicit reference to relevance would not change how it would seek to achieve the two aims.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 6—MEASUREMENT

INTRODUCTION	BC6.1
MIXED MEASUREMENT	BC6.5
MEASUREMENT BASES AND THE INFORMATION THEY PROVIDE	BC6.12
Historical cost	BC6.19
Current value	BC6.23
Transaction costs	BC6.30
FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN SELECTING A MEASUREMENT BASIS	BC6.34
Effect on both the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance	BC6.36
Relevance	BC6.37
Faithful representation	BC6.43
Enhancing qualitative characteristics	BC6.46
Factors specific to initial measurement	BC6.49
More than one measurement basis	BC6.50
MEASUREMENT OF EQUITY	BC6.52

Introduction

- BC6.1 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board did not provide detailed guidance on when a particular measurement basis would be suitable because the suitability of particular measurement bases will vary depending on facts and circumstances. Instead, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*:
- (a) describes measurement bases and the information they provide; and
 - (b) discusses the factors to consider when selecting a measurement basis.
- BC6.2 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft questioned whether simply describing the measurement bases and discussing the factors to consider when selecting a measurement basis would provide the Board with sufficient guidance to develop measurement requirements in Standards. These respondents suggested that the Board should undertake further research on measurement and either:
- (a) delay issuing a revised *Conceptual Framework* until that research is completed;
 - (b) issue a revised *Conceptual Framework* without a measurement section; or
 - (c) develop high-level interim guidance on measurement for use until more complete concepts and principles can be developed.
- BC6.3 The Board rejected these suggestions. The 2010 *Conceptual Framework* provided little guidance on measurement. This lack of guidance was a significant gap in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* that needed to be addressed. The Board concluded that the guidance in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* will help it to develop measurement requirements in Standards.
- BC6.4 Further, the Board considered whether the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* needs to identify a separate overall objective for measurement. The Board concluded that a separate measurement objective is unlikely to provide useful additional guidance to help it to develop measurement requirements. Instead, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes how measurement contributes to the objective of general purpose financial statements—see paragraph 6.45.

Mixed measurement (paragraph 6.2)

- BC6.5 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered whether the *Conceptual Framework* should advocate using a single measurement basis. The main advantages of using a single measurement basis would be:
- (a) the amounts included in the financial statements could be more meaningfully added, subtracted and compared; and
 - (b) the financial statements would be less complex and, arguably, more understandable.
- BC6.6 In addition, if the Board were to identify a concept of wealth or capital that would meet the information needs of users of financial statements, a single measurement basis would be required in order to produce a measure of that wealth or capital. However, as discussed in paragraphs BC8.1–BC8.4 the Board decided not to update the discussion of capital and capital maintenance and not to seek to identify a concept of wealth or capital that would meet the information needs of users of financial statements.
- BC6.7 Both the 2013 Discussion Paper and the 2015 Exposure Draft suggested that a single measurement basis for all assets, liabilities, income and expenses might not always provide the most relevant information to users of financial statements. Nearly all respondents who commented on this issue supported the suggested approach.

- BC6.8 However, a few respondents disagreed and proposed one of the following as a single measurement basis:
- (a) historical cost;
 - (b) fair value;
 - (c) current entry value (for example, current cost, see paragraphs 6.21–6.22 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*); or
 - (d) deprivation (relief) value (see paragraph BC6.29(a)).
- BC6.9 Most of the respondents who suggested the use of a single measurement basis conceded that this could not be achieved in practice, at least in the short term. However, they said that the Board should describe a default measurement basis that it would use when developing Standards. The Board should then commit to explaining any decisions to use any other measurement basis.
- BC6.10 The Board concluded that in different circumstances different measurement bases may provide information relevant to users of financial statements. In addition, in different circumstances, a particular measurement basis may be:
- (a) easier to understand and implement than another;
 - (b) more verifiable, less prone to error or subject to a lower level of measurement uncertainty than another; or
 - (c) less costly to implement than another.
- BC6.11 Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that consideration of the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information and of the cost constraint is likely to result in the selection of different measurement bases for different assets, liabilities, income and expenses.

Measurement bases and the information they provide (paragraphs 6.4–6.42)

- BC6.12 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies two categories of measurement bases. Paragraphs BC6.19–BC6.22 discuss historical cost measurement bases and paragraphs BC6.23–BC6.29 discuss current value measurement bases.
- BC6.13 The 2013 Discussion Paper identified cash-flow-based measurements as a separate category of measurement bases. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not do so because the Board concluded that cash-flow-based measurements are not measurement bases in their own right. Instead, cash-flow-based measurement techniques can be used to estimate a measure in applying a specified measurement basis. Paragraphs 6.91–6.95 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discuss how those techniques can be used in this way.
- BC6.14 The Board considered and rejected the idea of categorising measurement bases according to whether they provide information about the cost of inputs to an entity's business activities—entry values such as historical cost and current cost—or information about the cost of outputs from an entity's business activities—exit values such as fair value, value in use and fulfilment value. The Board did not find such a distinction useful when describing or selecting a measurement basis for use in a particular Standard because the difference between entry and exit values in the same market is often small, except for transaction costs (see paragraphs BC6.30–BC6.33).
- BC6.15 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes the measurement bases the Board is likely to consider selecting when developing Standards. It acknowledges in paragraph 6.3 that a Standard may need to describe how to implement the measurement basis selected in that Standard.

- BC6.16 In addition, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses the information provided by particular measurement bases. Identifying that information will help to identify whether a particular measurement basis is likely to provide useful information to the users of financial statements in particular circumstances.
- BC6.17 A few respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft said the discussion of measurement bases is biased: some suggested that the discussion is biased against historical cost; conversely, others perceived a bias against current values. In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board sought to provide a balanced description of the measurement bases and the information that they provide. The Board did not intend to favour one measurement basis over the others.
- BC6.18 In the measurement chapter, the term 'value' is used to refer in general terms to an economic value of an asset or liability, rather than its carrying amount (see paragraph 5.1) and rather than a specific current value such as fair value. That term is used, for example, when that economic value may differ from the amount of a future cash payment or future cash receipt, for example, because of factors such as the time value of money.

Historical cost (paragraphs 6.4–6.9 and 6.24–6.31)

- BC6.19 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that the historical cost of an asset is initially the value of the costs incurred in acquiring or creating the asset, comprising the consideration paid to acquire or create the asset plus transaction costs. The historical cost of a liability when it is incurred or taken on is initially the value of the consideration received to incur or take on the liability minus transaction costs. When developing Standards, the Board will decide whether to specify how those initial values are determined.
- BC6.20 Consumption of all or part of an asset leads to derecognition of the part of the asset that is consumed. If the asset is measured at historical cost, this derecognition is reflected through depreciation or amortisation of the asset. Similarly, fulfilment of all or part of a liability leads to derecognition of the part of the liability that is fulfilled.
- BC6.21 If an asset has become impaired or a liability has become onerous, the cost determined at initial recognition is unlikely to provide relevant information if it is not updated. Consequently, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes the historical cost of an asset as being updated to reflect the fact that part of the historical cost is no longer recoverable, that is, the carrying amount of the asset is updated to reflect impairment. Similarly, the historical cost of a liability is updated to reflect changes that result in the liability becoming onerous, that is, the consideration received to incur or take on the liability is no longer sufficient to depict the obligation to fulfil the liability. However, historical cost does not reflect changes in value of an asset that is not impaired or of a liability that is not onerous.
- BC6.22 The amortised cost of a financial asset or financial liability reflects estimates of future cash flows discounted at a rate that is not updated after initial recognition, unless the asset or liability bears interest at a variable rate. For loans given or received, if interest is receivable or payable regularly, the amortised cost of the loan typically approximates the amount originally paid or received. In addition, the carrying amount of a loan given is reduced if it is impaired. Therefore, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* categorises amortised cost of financial assets and financial liabilities as a form of historical cost.

Current value (paragraphs 6.10–6.22 and 6.32–6.42)

- BC6.23 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies current value measures as providing monetary information about assets, liabilities and related income and expenses using information updated to reflect conditions at the measurement date. It states that current measurement bases include fair value, value in use (for assets), fulfilment value (for liabilities) and current cost.

- BC6.24 The description of fair value in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* is consistent with its description in IFRS 13 *Fair Value Measurement*. The descriptions of value in use and fulfilment value are derived from the definition of value in use in IAS 36 *Impairment of Assets*, which is the most explicit of the various definitions of entity-specific value in Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The description of current cost is derived from descriptions of current cost in various academic sources.
- BC6.25 Some Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* use value in use, but not as a separate measurement basis. In those Standards, value in use is used in determining the recoverable amount of an asset that is measured at historical cost and may be impaired. Within that context, if value in use is used to determine the recoverable amount of an impaired asset, immediately after the impairment loss has been recognised, the carrying amount of the asset equals its value in use. Nevertheless, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies value in use as a separate measurement basis because:
- (a) it differs conceptually from historical cost, even though value in use is used in determining recoverable historical cost; and
 - (b) the Board might decide that in some circumstances an entity should measure an asset using an entity-specific current value (ie value in use) instead of fair value.
- BC6.26 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that value in use and fulfilment value reflect the same factors as fair value, but using entity-specific assumptions, not assumptions by market participants.
- BC6.27 Value in use and fulfilment value, therefore, reflect the price for bearing the uncertainty inherent in the cash flows—a risk premium. Including such a risk premium produces information that can be relevant because it reflects the economic difference between items subject to different levels of uncertainty. The inclusion of a risk premium is implicit in how value in use is described in IAS 36.²¹
- BC6.28 Although current cost is not widely used in IFRS Standards, there is a significant body of academic literature that advocates the use of current cost in financial reporting. Consequently, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes current cost.
- BC6.29 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not describe the following current value measurement bases:
- (a) deprival value for assets or relief value for liabilities. The deprival value of an asset is the loss that an entity would suffer if it were deprived of the asset being measured. Similarly, the relief value of a liability is the benefit that an entity would enjoy if it were relieved of the liability being measured. The Board did not include a discussion of deprival value or relief value because they are more complex than other measurement bases and have been used in few jurisdictions. Hence, the Board concluded that it is unlikely to use deprival value or relief value when developing Standards.
 - (b) net realisable value. Net realisable value depicts the estimated consideration from the sale of the asset reduced by the estimated costs of sale. The Board concluded that it is unnecessary to describe net realisable value separately, because it is derived from another current measure.
 - (c) cost of release. Cost of release depicts the estimated cost (including transaction costs) of obtaining release from a liability by negotiation with the counterparty. Because it is relatively unusual for entities to obtain release from liabilities, instead of fulfilling them, the Board concluded that it is unnecessary to describe this measurement basis in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

21 See paragraphs 55–56, A1 and A15–A21 of IAS 36 *Impairment of Assets*.

Transaction costs

BC6.30 Transaction costs can arise both when:

- (a) an asset is acquired or a liability is incurred or taken on; and
- (b) an asset is sold or disposed of or a liability is settled or transferred.

BC6.31 Defining which costs are transaction costs is beyond the scope of the *Conceptual Framework*. They have normally been defined in particular Standards as incremental costs, other than the transaction price, that would not have been incurred if the particular asset (or liability) being measured had not been acquired (incurred) or sold or disposed of (transferred or settled).

BC6.32 Transaction costs incurred in acquiring an asset or incurring a liability are a feature of the transaction in which the asset was acquired or the liability was incurred. Hence:

- (a) the historical cost and current cost of an asset or liability reflect those transaction costs. Although the transaction costs are not part of the transaction price, the entity could not have acquired the asset or incurred the liability without incurring those transaction costs.
- (b) if the measure is intended to depict the fair value, fulfilment value or value in use of an asset or liability, the measure does not reflect those transaction costs. Those costs do not affect the current value of that asset or liability.

BC6.33 Transaction costs that would be incurred in selling or disposing of an asset or in settling or transferring a liability are a feature of a possible future transaction. Hence:

- (a) value in use and fulfilment value reflect those transaction costs if the entity expects to incur them;
- (b) fair value does not reflect those transaction costs; and
- (c) historical cost and current cost do not reflect transaction costs that would be incurred in selling or disposing of an asset or in settling or transferring a liability because these measurement bases are entry values—they reflect the costs of acquiring the asset or incurring the liability.

Factors to consider when selecting a measurement basis (paragraphs 6.43–6.86)

BC6.34 To meet the objective of financial statements, information provided by a particular measurement basis must be useful to users of financial statements. A measurement basis achieves this if it provides information that is relevant and faithfully represents what it purports to represent. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses how relevance and faithful representation affect the selection of a measurement basis.

BC6.35 The Board considered whether to prescribe the order in which factors should be considered in selecting a measurement basis (for example, using a hierarchy or decision tree). However, the Board concluded that this would not be possible or desirable. The relative importance of the factors will depend on facts and circumstances. Indeed, in many cases it will be important to consider several factors when selecting a measurement basis.

Effect on both the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance (paragraph 6.43)

BC6.36 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that when selecting a measurement basis it is necessary to consider the nature of the information that the measurement basis will produce in both the statement of financial position and the statement(s) of financial performance. Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft stated that the *Conceptual Framework* should give more weight to the effect that a particular measure would have on the statement(s) of financial performance. In their view, the statement(s) of financial performance is more useful than the statement of financial position to users of financial statements. However, the Board concluded that the relative importance of the information produced in those statements will depend on how users will use the resulting information in their analysis, which will, in turn, depend on facts and circumstances.

Relevance (paragraphs 6.49–6.57)

BC6.37 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses the following factors that can affect the relevance of the information provided by a measurement basis:

- (a) characteristics of the asset or liability; and
- (b) contribution to future cash flows (see paragraphs BC6.38–BC6.42).

BC6.38 Paragraph 1.14 notes that some economic resources produce cash flows directly, whereas other economic resources are used in combination to produce cash flows. Building on this idea, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies as one factor in the selection of a measurement basis the way in which an asset or liability contributes to future cash flows.

BC6.39 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states that the way in which an asset or liability contributes to future cash flows depends, in part, on the nature of the business activities conducted by the entity. For example, depending on the nature of an entity's business activities, the same asset could be sold as inventory, leased to another entity or used in the entity's business. The Board acknowledged that measuring in the same way assets or liabilities that contribute to cash flows differently could reduce comparability by making different things appear the same.²²

BC6.40 Although some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft expressed a concern that subjectivity could result if the nature of an entity's business activities were to be considered when selecting a measurement basis, many supported this approach. In addition, the Board noted that, in many cases, the nature of an entity's business activities is a matter of fact, not an opinion or management intent. When this is not the case, the Board will need to consider how to address any subjectivity.

BC6.41 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not refer explicitly to any particular business activity, for example, long-term investment, for the reasons set out in paragraph BC0.39.

BC6.42 To help in the selection of a measurement basis, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* also provides guidance on when historical cost or current value measurement bases might provide relevant information about financial assets and financial liabilities. That guidance builds on concepts identified by the Board in developing IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments*. The Basis for Conclusions on IFRS 9 explains why the Board decided to use those concepts.

22 Paragraph 2.27 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* states: 'Comparability is not uniformity. For information to be comparable, like things must look alike and different things must look different.'

Faithful representation (paragraphs 6.58–6.62)

- BC6.43 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies the following as factors that can affect whether the information provided by a particular measurement basis provides a faithful representation of the economic phenomena that are being depicted:
- (a) whether the assets and liabilities are related in some way; and
 - (b) measurement uncertainty (see paragraphs BC6.44–BC6.45).
- BC6.44 Some respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper suggested that one factor to be considered in selecting a measurement basis is the level of measurement uncertainty associated with that measurement basis. Some respondents used the term ‘reliability’ to describe that factor. As discussed in paragraphs BC2.28–BC2.31, the Board did not reintroduce the term ‘reliability’. Paragraph 2.22 of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* explains that if a high level of measurement uncertainty is involved in making an estimate, that may indicate that different information about the economic phenomenon might be more useful (see paragraphs BC2.55–BC2.56). In addition, Chapter 6—*Measurement* discusses how measurement uncertainty can affect the selection of a measurement basis.
- BC6.45 Some respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft stated that applying prudence as they understand the term would imply that the tolerable level of measurement uncertainty would always be higher for liabilities than for assets (see paragraphs BC2.37(b), BC2.41–BC2.45 and BC2.55–BC2.56). The Board disagreed with this view, concluding that the tolerable level of measurement uncertainty depends on facts and circumstances and can be decided only when developing Standards.

Enhancing qualitative characteristics (paragraphs 6.63–6.76)

- BC6.46 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* identifies four ‘enhancing qualitative characteristics’ that make financial information more useful—comparability, verifiability, timeliness and understandability. In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board identified no specific implications of timeliness for selection of a measurement basis beyond those discussed in Chapter 2—*Qualitative characteristics of useful financial information*. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses the general implications that comparability, verifiability and understandability have for the selection of a measurement basis.
- BC6.47 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered these suggestions made by respondents:
- (a) verifiability should play a more significant role in selecting a measurement basis; and
 - (b) comparability could be enhanced if the Board, when developing Standards, prevented preparers of financial statements from choosing between measurement bases.
- BC6.48 The Board concluded that the discussion of verifiability appropriately reflects the role of verifiability as a factor to consider when selecting a measurement basis. Further, the Board concluded that additional discussion of the disadvantages of developing Standards that allow preparers to choose between alternative measurement bases is unnecessary because paragraph 2.29 acknowledges that permitting alternative accounting methods for the same economic phenomenon diminishes comparability.

Factors specific to initial measurement (paragraphs 6.77–6.82)

BC6.49 The 2015 Exposure Draft discussed both exchanges of items of similar value and exchanges of items of different value. Respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft commented that the meaning of the terms ‘similar value’ and ‘different value’ was unclear. To respond to such concerns, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* refers instead to whether the terms of a transaction are market terms.

More than one measurement basis (paragraphs 6.83–6.86)

BC6.50 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses situations in which more than one measurement basis is needed for an asset or liability and for related income and expenses to provide users of financial statements with useful information.

BC6.51 One way in which such information could be provided is to use a current measurement basis for an asset or liability in the statement of financial position and to use a different measurement basis for the related income or expenses in the statement of profit or loss. In such cases, the difference between the income or expenses included in the statement of profit or loss and the change in current value of the asset or liability is included in other comprehensive income. As discussed in paragraph 7.17, the Board would decide to require information to be provided in this way only in exceptional circumstances—and only if doing so would result in the statement of profit or loss providing more relevant information or providing a more faithful representation of the entity’s financial performance for the period.

Measurement of equity (paragraphs 6.87–6.90)

BC6.52 Although total equity is not measured directly, it may be appropriate to measure directly individual classes of equity or components of equity to provide useful information. The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* discusses this idea.

BC6.53 A few respondents to the 2015 Exposure Draft disagreed with the proposal that some individual classes or components of equity could be measured directly. The respondents said they disagreed because:

- (a) measuring a class of equity or a component of equity directly would be inappropriate because equity is defined as a residual interest; and
- (b) it would be inconsistent with the reporting entity perspective because dividing total equity between classes and into components would result in the reporting of items that do not have a financial effect on the reporting entity as a whole.

BC6.54 Although the total carrying amount of equity (total equity) is measured as a residual, the Board noted that equity is defined as a type of claim—a residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities. Measuring some classes of equity, or some components of equity, directly does not contradict that definition and differs from measuring total equity directly. Even if some individual classes or components of equity are measured directly, total equity will continue to equal the total of the carrying amounts of all recognised assets minus the total of the carrying amounts of all recognised liabilities. Consequently, if an entity has more than one class of equity or more than one component of equity, at least one of them is measured as a residual.

BC6.55 The Board also concluded that the direct measurement of some individual classes of equity or components of equity would not contradict the entity perspective adopted in financial statements. Those direct measures might provide users of financial statements with information useful in making decisions relating to providing resources to the entity. This information would be provided from the perspective of the entity and reflect the equity claims held against the entity. Such information would not be provided from the perspective of a particular claimholder.

from paragraph

CHAPTER 7—PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE

INTRODUCTION	BC7.1
CLASSIFICATION OF EQUITY	BC7.4
CLASSIFICATION OF INCOME AND EXPENSES	BC7.6
Terminology	BC7.6
Approach to guidance on presentation and disclosure of income and expenses	BC7.9
Describing profit or loss	BC7.15
Profit or loss and other comprehensive income	BC7.21
Reclassifying items into the statement of profit or loss	BC7.26

Introduction

- BC7.1 The topic of presentation and disclosure was not addressed in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. Respondents to the Board's public consultation on its agenda in 2011 identified this topic as a priority. A particular issue identified was providing information about an entity's financial performance, including the use of other comprehensive income.
- BC7.2 In response to that feedback, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* introduces for the first time:
- (a) concepts that describe how information should be presented and disclosed in financial statements. Those concepts will guide the Board in setting presentation and disclosure requirements in Standards and may guide entities in providing information in financial statements.
 - (b) guidance on classifying income and expenses for the Board to use when it decides whether they are included in the statement of profit or loss or are included outside the statement of profit or loss, in other comprehensive income (see paragraphs 7.15–7.18).
 - (c) guidance for the Board on whether and when income and expenses included in other comprehensive income should subsequently be reclassified into the statement of profit or loss (paragraph 7.19).
- BC7.3 When it issued the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board was undertaking:
- (a) a Disclosure Initiative, a collection of implementation and research projects aimed at improving disclosure in financial statements by providing additional guidance that builds on the presentation and disclosure concepts set out in the *Conceptual Framework*.
 - (b) a research project on primary financial statements. That project was examining potential targeted improvements to the structure and content of the statement(s) of financial performance and the statement of cash flows and perhaps also the statement of financial position and the statement of changes in equity.

Classification of equity (paragraphs 7.12–7.13)

- BC7.4 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* provides only high-level guidance on when it may be appropriate to present separately different classes of equity claims, and different components of equity. This guidance is based on the concepts for classification in paragraphs 7.7–7.8.
- BC7.5 The Board may explore enhancements to the statement of changes in equity or other enhancements to presentation or disclosure requirements as part of its research project on Financial Instruments with Characteristics of Equity. Such enhancements might include some approaches the Board explored in the 2013 Discussion Paper.

Classification of income and expenses (paragraphs 7.14–7.19)

Terminology

- BC7.6 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* introduced the term 'statement(s) of financial performance' to refer to the statement or section of profit or loss together with the statement or section showing other comprehensive income.
- BC7.7 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* uses that term because it is consistent with the term 'statement of financial position' used in Standards and is clearer than the term 'statement of comprehensive income' sometimes used by the Board.
- BC7.8 In 2007, the Board introduced a requirement to present all income and expenses recognised outside profit or loss in a statement of comprehensive income. The Board also introduced the

term ‘other comprehensive income’ at that point. That term refers to income and expenses not included in the statement of profit or loss. Some respondents suggested that the term ‘other comprehensive income’ is neither particularly descriptive nor well understood by users of financial statements. Nonetheless, the Board concluded that avoiding the use of that term or using a different term could be confusing. Hence, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* uses that term.

Approach to guidance on presentation and disclosure of income and expenses

- BC7.9 Over the years, the Board has decided that several items of income and expenses may or must be recognised outside profit or loss. Those decisions were made for particular reasons in particular projects, not for a single consistently applied conceptual reason.
- BC7.10 The 1989 *Framework* and the 2010 *Conceptual Framework* contained no reference to income or expenses presented outside the statement of profit or loss and no reference to other comprehensive income.
- BC7.11 The Board decided it was important for the *Conceptual Framework* to include some discussion of this topic. However, the Board decided that the *Conceptual Framework* should not discuss whether income and expenses should be presented in a single statement of financial performance or in two statements, viewing this as a decision to be made when developing Standards. Since 2007, that decision has been set out in IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*.
- BC7.12 In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board considered the following questions:
- (a) how to define or describe profit or loss (see paragraphs BC7.15–BC7.20);
 - (b) how to decide which income and expenses are included in the statement of profit or loss and which income and expenses are included in other comprehensive income (see paragraphs BC7.21–BC7.25); and
 - (c) whether and when the amounts included in other comprehensive income should be reclassified into the statement of profit or loss (see paragraphs BC7.26–BC7.33).
- BC7.13 Many respondents to the 2013 Discussion Paper and to the 2015 Exposure Draft expressed a view that the proposed guidance on presentation of income and expenses was insufficient and would not provide the Board with a clear basis for standard-setting. Many respondents asked the Board to do further work on reporting financial performance.
- BC7.14 However, the Board decided that the lack of guidance on the presentation of income and expenses was a significant gap in the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. The Board concluded that it had made significant progress in developing high-level guidance on presentation of income and expenses and that this guidance would help the Board to develop presentation requirements in Standards. Hence, the Board decided to include such guidance in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, rather than to explore the use of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income in a separate project. That decision will not preclude further work on reporting financial performance.

Describing profit or loss (paragraph 7.16)

- BC7.15 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* describes:
- (a) the statement of profit or loss as the primary source of information about an entity’s financial performance for the reporting period; and
 - (b) the total or subtotal for profit or loss as a highly summarised depiction of the entity’s financial performance for the period.

- BC7.16 Those descriptions are consistent with the fact that many users of financial statements incorporate the total or subtotal for profit or loss in their analysis, either as a starting point or as the main indicator of an entity's financial performance.
- BC7.17 Merely describing the statement of profit or loss in the manner set out in paragraph 7.16 will be unlikely to satisfy those who asked for a definition of 'profit or loss' or for a more precise description. However, on the basis of its previous work the Board concluded that no single characteristic, or small number of characteristics, is shared by all items included in the statement of profit or loss but not shared by items that are most appropriately included in other comprehensive income. Consequently, the Board concluded that it is not possible to produce a robust conceptual definition of profit or loss or of other comprehensive income.
- BC7.18 The Board also concluded that it could not create a prescriptive list of all categories of items that are most appropriately included in the statement of profit or loss. Such a list could never be complete and would inevitably lead to reporting in other comprehensive income some, perhaps many, items that would generally be regarded as being more appropriately included in the statement of profit or loss.
- BC7.19 A number of stakeholders repeatedly asked the Board to define profit or loss. A few of them provided suggestions for how to develop such a definition or for distinguishing income and expenses to be included in the statement of profit or loss from income and expenses to be included in other comprehensive income. However, no consensus on a viable approach emerged.
- BC7.20 As discussed in paragraphs BC7.17–BC7.19 of this Basis for Conclusions, the Board concluded that it was not possible to develop a robust conceptual definition of profit or loss or of other comprehensive income or a prescriptive list of all categories of items that are most appropriately included in the statement of profit or loss. Nevertheless, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* introduces for the first time guidance on when it might be appropriate for the Board to include income or expenses in other comprehensive income. The Board concluded that introducing guidance on this topic was a significant improvement.

Profit or loss and other comprehensive income (paragraph 7.17)

- BC7.21 As mentioned in paragraph BC7.17, the Board did not identify a single characteristic or a single set of characteristics shared by all items that are most appropriately included in the statement of profit or loss.
- BC7.22 Further, the Board explored whether it might be possible to define a small number of categories of items that would or might be included in other comprehensive income. The Board described one approach to doing that in the 2013 Discussion Paper, but that approach did not attract significant support from respondents.
- BC7.23 For the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board developed an approach to classifying income and expenses that is based on the description of the statement of profit or loss. As mentioned in paragraph BC7.15, that description states that the statement of profit or loss is the primary source of information about an entity's financial performance for the reporting period. If that statement is the primary source of that information, excluding income and expenses from that statement without compelling reasons could make that statement less useful.
- BC7.24 Accordingly, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* sets out a principle that all income and expenses are included in the statement of profit or loss. The Board's intention in establishing this principle was to emphasise that the statement of profit or loss is the default location for income and expenses. Thus, decisions to exclude any income and expenses from the statement of profit or loss and to include them in other comprehensive income can be made only in exceptional circumstances. Those exceptional circumstances would be when the Board concludes that requiring or permitting the exclusion of particular items of income or expenses from the statement of profit or loss would result in the statement of profit or loss providing more relevant information or providing a more faithful representation of an entity's financial performance for that period.

BC7.25 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not include specific guidance on how the Board might reach that conclusion. The Board expects to take that decision when developing Standards and to explain its reasons in the bases for conclusions on those Standards. Entities cannot take that decision (see paragraph 88 of IAS 1).

Reclassifying items into the statement of profit or loss (paragraph 7.19)

BC7.26 The Board considered whether items of income and expenses included in other comprehensive income should be subsequently reclassified into the statement of profit or loss. Such reclassification is sometimes referred to as 'recycling'.

BC7.27 Some of the Standards developed before the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* require such reclassification; other Standards prohibit reclassification. The differences between these requirements arose because the Board had taken different approaches to the issue at different times. Sometimes, the Board's approach was to view the statement(s) of financial performance as a single performance statement so that each item of income or expenses should appear only once in that statement. To be consistent with that approach, the Board generally prohibited reclassification in Standards it developed at those times. At other times, the Board's approach was that all income and expenses should be included in the statement of profit or loss at some point. To achieve that objective, reclassification would be necessary.

BC7.28 It would have been undesirable for the Board's decisions on reclassification to continue to fluctuate over time in line with changes in the composition of the Board and in the Board's approach. Accordingly, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* sets out the principle that the Board will apply in making decisions about reclassification.

BC7.29 The Board concluded that if the statement of profit or loss is the primary source of information about an entity's financial performance for the period, the cumulative amounts included in that statement over time need to be as complete as possible. Hence, income and expenses can be permanently excluded from the statement of profit or loss only if there is a compelling reason in that particular case.

BC7.30 Accordingly, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* includes a principle that income and expenses included in other comprehensive income are subsequently reclassified into the statement of profit or loss. The reporting period in which reclassification takes place is the period when doing so results in the statement of profit or loss providing more relevant information or providing a more faithful representation of the entity's financial performance for that period.

BC7.31 Paragraphs 6.83–6.86 describe an approach that uses one measurement basis in the statement of financial position and a different measurement basis in the statement of profit or loss. When this approach is used, reclassification is the only way to ensure that, over the holding period of the asset or liability, the cumulative amount of income or expenses included in the statement of profit or loss for that asset or liability is the amount determined using the measurement basis selected for that statement.

BC7.32 In some cases, it might not be possible to identify any period when reclassifying income and expenses into the statement of profit or loss would have the result described in paragraph BC7.30. In such cases, without an appropriate, non-arbitrary basis for reclassification, reclassification would not provide useful information.

BC7.33 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* does not include specific guidance on when reclassification would not provide useful information. The Board expects to take that decision when developing Standards and to explain its reasons in the bases for conclusions on those Standards. Entities cannot take that decision.

CHAPTER 8—CONCEPTS OF CAPITAL AND CAPITAL MAINTENANCE

- BC8.1 The Board decided that updating the discussion of capital and capital maintenance was not feasible when it developed the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* and could have delayed the completion of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* significantly.
- BC8.2 The Board decided that it would be inappropriate for the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to exclude a discussion of capital and capital maintenance altogether. Those concepts are important to financial reporting and influence the definitions of income and expenses, the selection of measurement bases, and presentation and disclosure decisions.
- BC8.3 Therefore, the material in Chapter 8—*Concepts of capital and capital maintenance* of the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* has been carried forward unchanged from the 2010 *Conceptual Framework*. That material originally appeared in the 1989 *Framework*.
- BC8.4 The Board may decide to revisit the concepts of capital and capital maintenance in the future if it considers such a revision necessary.

Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards



Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

COPYRIGHT

© Copyright 2018 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Framework contains the IFRS Foundation copyright material. Reproduction within Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Hong Kong should be addressed to the Director, Finance and Operations, Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

All rights in this material outside of Hong Kong are reserved by IFRS Foundation. Reproduction of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards outside of Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only. Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce for commercial purposes outside Hong Kong should be addressed to the IFRS Foundation at www.ifrs.org.

Further details of the IFRS Foundation copyright notice is available at <http://app1.hkicpa.org.hk/ebook/copyright-notice.pdf>

CONTENTS

	<i>from page</i>
INTRODUCTION	4
AMENDMENTS TO:	
HKFRS 2 SHARE-BASED PAYMENT	5
HKFRS 3 BUSINESS COMBINATIONS	6
HKFRS 6 EXPLORATION FOR AND EVALUATION OF MINERAL RESOURCES	7
HKFRS 14 REGULATORY DEFERRAL ACCOUNTS	8
HKAS 1 PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	9
HKAS 8 ACCOUNTING POLICIES, CHANGES IN ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES AND ERRORS	12
HKAS 34 INTERIM FINANCIAL REPORTING	14
HKAS 37 PROVISIONS, CONTINGENT LIABILITIES AND CONTINGENT ASSETS	15
HKAS 38 INTANGIBLE ASSETS	15
HK(IFRIC)-INT 12 SERVICE CONCESSION ARRANGEMENTS	15
HK(IFRIC)-INT 19 EXTINGUISHING FINANCIAL LIABILITIES WITH EQUITY INSTRUMENTS	15
HK(IFRIC)-INT 20 STRIPPING COSTS IN THE PRODUCTION PHASE OF A SURFACE MINE	16
HK(IFRIC)-INT 22 FOREIGN CURRENCY TRANSACTIONS AND ADVANCE CONSIDERATION	16
HK(SIC)-INT 32 INTANGIBLE ASSETS—WEB SITE COSTS	16

Introduction

Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards sets out amendments to HKFRS Standards (Standards) and their accompanying documents to reflect the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*).

Some Standards and their accompanying documents contain references to, or quotations from, the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (Framework)* or the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2010. *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards* updates some of those references and quotations so that they refer to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, and makes other amendments to clarify which version of the *Conceptual Framework* is referred to in particular documents.

These amendments are based on proposals in the Exposure Draft *Updating References to the Conceptual Framework*, published in 2015, and amend Standards and their accompanying documents that will be effective for annual reporting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020.

Amendments to HKFRS 2 *Share-based Payment*

Paragraph 63E is added.

Effective date

...

63E *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards*, issued in 2018, amended the footnote to the definition of an equity instrument in Appendix A. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020. Earlier application is permitted if at the same time an entity also applies all other amendments made by *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards*. An entity shall apply the amendment to HKFRS 2 retrospectively, subject to the transitional provisions in paragraphs 53–59 of this Standard, in accordance with HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. However, if an entity determines that retrospective application would be impracticable or would involve undue cost or effort, it shall apply the amendment to HKFRS 2 by reference to paragraphs 23–28, 50–53 and 54F of HKAS 8.

In Appendix A, the footnote to the definition of an equity instrument is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

* The *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2018 defines a liability as a present obligation of the entity arising from to transfer an economic resource as a result of past events, ~~the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow from the entity of resources embodying economic benefits (ie an outflow of cash or other assets of the entity).~~

Amendment to HKFRS 3 *Business Combinations*

In paragraph 11, the footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*' is amended. Paragraph 11 has not been otherwise amended but is included for ease of reference. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Recognition conditions

- 11 To qualify for recognition as part of applying the acquisition method, the identifiable assets acquired and liabilities assumed must meet the definitions of assets and liabilities in the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements** at the acquisition date. For example, costs the acquirer expects but is not obliged to incur in the future to effect its plan to exit an activity of an acquiree or to terminate the employment of or relocate an acquiree's employees are not liabilities at the acquisition date. Therefore, the acquirer does not recognise those costs as part of applying the acquisition method. Instead, the acquirer recognises those costs in its post-combination financial statements in accordance with other IFRSs.

* ~~*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* was replaced by the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in October 2010.~~

For this Standard, acquirers are required to apply the definitions of an asset and a liability and supporting guidance in the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* rather than the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2018.

Amendments to HKFRS 6 *Exploration for and Evaluation of Mineral Resources*

Paragraph 10 is amended and paragraph 26A is added. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Elements of cost of exploration and evaluation assets

- ...
- 10 Expenditures related to the development of mineral resources shall not be recognised as exploration and evaluation assets. The ~~Framework~~ Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting and HKAS 38 *Intangible Assets* provide guidance on the recognition of assets arising from development.
- ...

Effective date

- ...
- 26A Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards, issued in 2018, amended paragraph 10. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020. Earlier application is permitted if at the same time an entity also applies all other amendments made by Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards. An entity shall apply the amendment to HKFRS 6 retrospectively in accordance with HKAS 8 Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors. However, if an entity determines that retrospective application would be impracticable or would involve undue cost or effort, it shall apply the amendment to HKFRS 6 by reference to paragraphs 23–28, 50–53 and 54F of HKAS 8.

Amendment to HKFRS 14 *Regulatory Deferral Accounts*

The footnote to the first occurrence of 'reliable' in paragraph 13 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * In ~~October~~ 2010, the HKICPA replaced the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (Framework)* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework)*. The term "faithful representation", which was used in the *Conceptual Framework* issued in 2010 and is also used in the revised version of the *Conceptual Framework* issued in 2018, encompasses the main characteristics that the ~~previous *Framework*~~ called "reliability". The requirement in paragraph 13 of this Standard is based on the requirements of HKAS 8, which retains the term "reliable".

Amendments to HKAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*

Paragraphs 7, 15, 19–20, 23–24, 28 and 89 are amended and paragraph 139S is added. Four footnotes are deleted—the footnotes to ‘paragraph 25’ in paragraph 7, to the second sentence in paragraph 15, to paragraph 28 and to ‘*Framework’s*’ in paragraph 89. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Definitions

7 The following terms are used in this Standard with the meanings specified:

...

Material Omissions or misstatements of items are material if they could, individually or collectively, influence the economic decisions that users make on the basis of the financial statements. Materiality depends on the size and nature of the omission or misstatement judged in the surrounding circumstances. The size or nature of the item, or a combination of both, could be the determining factor.

Assessing whether an omission or misstatement could influence economic decisions of users, and so be material, requires consideration of the characteristics of those users. ~~The *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* states in paragraph 25*~~ that ‘~~users~~Users are assumed to have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and accounting and a willingness to study the information with reasonable diligence.’ Therefore, the assessment needs to take into account how users with such attributes could reasonably be expected to be influenced in making economic decisions.

* ~~In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. Paragraph 25 was superseded by Chapter 3 of the *Conceptual Framework*.~~

...

Fair presentation and compliance with HKFRSs

15 Financial statements shall present fairly the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity. Fair presentation requires the faithful representation of the effects of transactions, other events and conditions in accordance with the definitions and recognition criteria for assets, liabilities, income and expenses set out in the ~~*Framework*~~*Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework)*.[‡] The application of HKFRSs, with additional disclosure when necessary, is presumed to result in financial statements that achieve a fair presentation.

* ~~Paragraphs 15–24 contain references to the objective of financial statements set out in the *Framework [for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements]*. In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, which replaced the objective of financial statements with the objective of general purpose financial reporting: see Chapter 1 of the *Conceptual Framework*.~~

- ...
- 19 In the extremely rare circumstances in which management concludes that compliance with a requirement in an HKFRS would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework, the entity shall depart from that requirement in the manner set out in paragraph 20 if the relevant regulatory framework requires, or otherwise does not prohibit, such a departure.
- 20 When an entity departs from a requirement of an HKFRS in accordance with paragraph 19, it shall disclose:
- (a) that management has concluded that the financial statements present fairly the entity's financial position, financial performance and cash flows;
 - (b) that it has complied with applicable HKFRSs, except that it has departed from a particular requirement to achieve a fair presentation;
 - (c) the title of the HKFRS from which the entity has departed, the nature of the departure, including the treatment that the HKFRS would require, the reason why that treatment would be so misleading in the circumstances that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework, and the treatment adopted; and
 - (d) for each period presented, the financial effect of the departure on each item in the financial statements that would have been reported in complying with the requirement.
- ...
- 23 In the extremely rare circumstances in which management concludes that compliance with a requirement in an HKFRS would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework, but the relevant regulatory framework prohibits departure from the requirement, the entity shall, to the maximum extent possible, reduce the perceived misleading aspects of compliance by disclosing:
- (a) the title of the HKFRS in question, the nature of the requirement, and the reason why management has concluded that complying with that requirement is so misleading in the circumstances that it conflicts with the objective of financial statements set out in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework; and
 - (b) for each period presented, the adjustments to each item in the financial statements that management has concluded would be necessary to achieve a fair presentation.
- 24 For the purpose of paragraphs 19–23, an item of information would conflict with the objective of financial statements when it does not represent faithfully the transactions, other events and conditions that it either purports to represent or could reasonably be expected to represent and, consequently, it would be likely to influence economic decisions made by users of financial statements. When assessing whether complying with a specific requirement in an HKFRS would be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework, management considers:
- (a) why the objective of financial statements is not achieved in the particular circumstances; and
 - (b) how the entity's circumstances differ from those of other entities that comply with the requirement. If other entities in similar circumstances comply with the requirement, there is a rebuttable presumption that the entity's compliance with the requirement would not be so misleading that it would conflict with the objective of financial statements set out in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework.
- ...

Accrual basis of accounting

...

- 28 When the accrual basis of accounting is used, an entity recognises items as assets, liabilities, equity, income and expenses (the elements of financial statements) when they satisfy the definitions and recognition criteria for those elements in the ~~Framework~~Conceptual Framework.^{*}

* replaced by the ~~Conceptual Framework~~ in October 2010

...

Profit or loss for the period

...

- 89 Some HKFRSs specify circumstances when an entity recognises particular items outside profit or loss in the current period. HKAS 8 specifies two such circumstances: the correction of errors and the effect of changes in accounting policies. Other HKFRSs require or permit components of other comprehensive income that meet the ~~Framework's~~Conceptual Framework's definition of income or expense to be excluded from profit or loss (see paragraph 7).

* In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the ~~Framework~~ with the ~~Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting~~.

...

Transition and effective date

...

- 139S Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards, issued in 2018, amended paragraphs 7, 15, 19–20, 23–24, 28 and 89. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020. Earlier application is permitted if at the same time an entity also applies all other amendments made by Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards. An entity shall apply the amendments to HKAS 1 retrospectively in accordance with HKAS 8 Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors. However, if an entity determines that retrospective application would be impracticable or would involve undue cost or effort, it shall apply the amendments to HKAS 1 by reference to paragraphs 23–28, 50–53 and 54F of HKAS 8.

Amendments to HKAS 8 Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors

Paragraphs 6 and 11(b) are amended. The footnotes to 'paragraph 25' in paragraph 6 and to paragraph 11(b) are deleted and a new footnote to paragraph 11(b) is added. The heading before paragraph 54 is amended and paragraphs 54F–54G are added. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Definitions

- ...
- 6 Assessing whether an omission or misstatement could influence economic decisions of users, and so be material, requires consideration of the characteristics of those users. ~~The Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements states in paragraph 25*~~ Users are assumed to have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and accounting and a willingness to study the information with reasonable diligence.[†] Therefore, the assessment needs to take into account how users with such attributes could reasonably be expected to be influenced in making economic decisions.

* ~~In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting. Paragraph 25 was superseded by Chapter 3 of the Conceptual Framework.~~

...

Selection and application of accounting policies

- ...
- 11 In making the judgement described in paragraph 10, management shall refer to, and consider the applicability of, the following sources in descending order:
- (a) the requirements in HKFRSs dealing with similar and related issues; and
 - (b) the definitions, recognition criteria and measurement concepts for assets, liabilities, income and expenses in the ~~Framework~~ Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework).^{*†}

* ~~In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

† Paragraph 54G explains how this requirement is amended for regulatory account balances.

...

Effective date and transition

...

54F Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards, issued in 2018, amended paragraphs 6 and 11(b). An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020. Earlier application is permitted if at the same time an entity also applies all other amendments made by Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards. An entity shall apply the amendments to paragraphs 6 and 11(b) retrospectively in accordance with this Standard. However, if an entity determines that retrospective application would be impracticable or would involve undue cost or effort, it shall apply the amendments to paragraphs 6 and 11(b) by reference to paragraphs 23–28 of this Standard. If retrospective application of any amendment in Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards would involve undue cost or effort, an entity shall, in applying paragraphs 23–28 of this Standard, read any reference except in the last sentence of paragraph 27 to ‘is impracticable’ as ‘involves undue cost or effort’ and any reference to ‘practicable’ as ‘possible without undue cost or effort’.

54G If an entity does not apply HKFRS 14 Regulatory Deferral Accounts, the entity shall, in applying paragraph 11(b) to regulatory account balances, continue to refer to, and consider the applicability of, the definitions, recognition criteria, and measurement concepts in the Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* instead of those in the Conceptual Framework. A regulatory account balance is the balance of any expense (or income) account that is not recognised as an asset or a liability in accordance with other applicable HKFRS Standards but is included, or is expected to be included, by the rate regulator in establishing the rate(s) that can be charged to customers. A rate regulator is an authorised body that is empowered by statute or regulation to establish the rate or a range of rates that bind an entity. The rate regulator may be a third-party body or a related party of the entity, including the entity’s own governing board, if that body is required by statute or regulation to set rates both in the interest of the customers and to ensure the overall financial viability of the entity.

* The reference is to the Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements.

Amendments to HKAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*

Paragraphs 31 and 33 are amended and paragraph 58 is added. The footnote to '(the *Framework*),' in paragraph 31 is deleted. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Same accounting policies as annual

...

31 Under the ~~*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (the Framework)*~~,**Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework)*, recognition is the 'process of ~~incorporating in the balance sheet or income statement capturing, for inclusion in the statement of financial position or the statement(s) of financial performance,~~ an item that meets the definition of ~~an element~~one of the elements of the ~~financial statements and satisfies the criteria for recognition~~'. The definitions of assets, liabilities, income, and expenses are fundamental to recognition, at the end of both annual and interim financial reporting periods.

* ~~In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

...

33 An essential characteristic of income (revenue) and expenses is that the related inflows and outflows of assets and liabilities have already taken place. If those inflows or outflows have taken place, the related revenue and expense are recognised; otherwise they are not recognised. ~~The *Framework* says that 'expenses are recognised in the income statement when a decrease in future economic benefits related to a decrease in an asset or an increase of a liability has arisen that can be measured reliably... [The] *Framework*~~*Conceptual Framework* does not allow the recognition of items in the ~~balance sheet~~statement of financial position which do not meet the definition of assets or liabilities.²

Effective date

...

58 *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards*, issued in 2018, amended paragraphs 31 and 33. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020. Earlier application is permitted if at the same time an entity also applies all other amendments made by *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards*. An entity shall apply the amendments to HKAS 34 retrospectively in accordance with HKAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. However, if an entity determines that retrospective application would be impracticable or would involve undue cost or effort, it shall apply the amendments to HKAS 34 by reference to paragraphs 43–45 of this Standard and paragraphs 23–28, 50–53 and 54F of HKAS 8.

Amendment to HKAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*

A footnote is added to the definition of a liability in paragraph 10.

- * The definition of a liability in this Standard was not revised following the revision of the definition of a liability in the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2018.

Amendment to HKAS 38 *Intangible Assets*

A footnote is added to the definition of an asset in paragraph 8.

- * The definition of an asset in this Standard was not revised following the revision of the definition of an asset in the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2018.

Amendment to HK(IFRIC)-Int 12 *Service Concession Arrangements*

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*' in the References section is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* was replaced by the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in October 2010.~~ The reference is to the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.*

Amendment to HK(IFRIC)-Int 19 *Extinguishing Financial Liabilities with Equity Instruments*

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*' in the References section is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. The reference is to the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.~~

Amendment to HK(IFRIC)-Int 20 *Stripping Costs in the Production Phase of a Surface Mine*

A footnote is added to '*Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*' in the References section.

- * The reference is to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.

Amendment to HK(IFRIC)-Int 22 *Foreign Currency Transactions and Advance Consideration*

A footnote is added to '*Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*' in the References section.

- * The reference is to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.

Amendments to HK(SIC)-Int 32 *Intangible Assets—Web Site Costs*

Paragraph 5 is amended and the footnote to the '*Framework*' in paragraph 5 is deleted. A new paragraph is added at the end of the section under the heading 'Effective date'. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Issue

- ...
- 5 This Interpretation does not apply to expenditure on purchasing, developing, and operating hardware (eg web servers, staging servers, production servers and Internet connections) of a web site. Such expenditure is accounted for under HKAS 16. Additionally, when an entity incurs expenditure on an Internet service provider hosting the entity's web site, the expenditure is recognised as an expense under HKAS 1.88 and the ~~*Framework*~~ *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* when the services are received.

* ~~In October 2010 the HKICPA replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

...

Effective date

...

Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards, issued in 2018, amended paragraph 5. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2020. Earlier application is permitted if at the same time an entity also applies all other amendments made by *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards*. An entity shall apply the amendment to HK(SIC)-Int 32 retrospectively in accordance with *HKAS 8 Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. However, if an entity determines that retrospective application would be impracticable or would involve undue cost or effort, it shall apply the amendment to HK(SIC)-Int 32 by reference to paragraphs 23–28, 50–53 and 54F of *HKAS 8*.

Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards (Basis for Conclusions)



COPYRIGHT

© Copyright 2018 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Framework contains the IFRS Foundation copyright material. Reproduction within Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Hong Kong should be addressed to the Director, Finance and Operations, Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

All rights in this material outside of Hong Kong are reserved by IFRS Foundation. Reproduction of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards outside of Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only. Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce for commercial purposes outside Hong Kong should be addressed to the IFRS Foundation at www.ifrs.org.

Further details of the IFRS Foundation copyright notice is available at <http://app1.hkicpa.org.hk/ebook/copyright-notice.pdf>

CONTENTS

from page

AMENDMENTS TO THE BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS ON:

HKFRS 1 <i>FIRST-TIME ADOPTION OF HONG KONG FINANCIAL REPORTING STANDARDS</i>	5
HKFRS 2 <i>SHARE-BASED PAYMENT</i>	5
HKFRS 3 <i>BUSINESS COMBINATIONS</i>	6
HKFRS 4 <i>INSURANCE CONTRACTS</i>	8
HKFRS 5 <i>NON-CURRENT ASSETS HELD FOR SALE AND DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS</i>	8
HKFRS 6 <i>EXPLORATION FOR AND EVALUATION OF MINERAL RESOURCES</i>	9
HKFRS 8 <i>OPERATING SEGMENTS</i>	10
HKFRS 9 <i>FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS</i>	10
HKFRS 10 <i>CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</i>	11
HKFRS 12 <i>DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTS IN OTHER ENTITIES</i>	12
HKFRS 14 <i>REGULATORY DEFERRAL ACCOUNTS</i>	13
HKFRS 15 <i>REVENUE FROM CONTRACTS WITH CUSTOMERS</i>	14
HKFRS 16 <i>LEASES</i>	14
HKFRS 17 <i>INSURANCE CONTRACTS</i>	14
HKAS 1 <i>PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</i>	14
HKAS 8 <i>ACCOUNTING POLICIES, CHANGES IN ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES AND ERRORS</i>	16
HKAS 12 <i>INCOME TAXES</i>	18
HKAS 16 <i>PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT</i>	19
HKAS 19 <i>EMPLOYEE BENEFITS</i>	19
HKAS 21 <i>THE EFFECTS OF CHANGES IN FOREIGN EXCHANGE RATES</i>	20
HKAS 28 <i>INVESTMENTS IN ASSOCIATES AND JOINT VENTURES</i>	20
HKAS 32 <i>FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: PRESENTATION</i>	20
HKAS 34 <i>INTERIM FINANCIAL REPORTING</i>	21
HKAS 36 <i>IMPAIRMENT OF ASSETS</i>	22
HKAS 38 <i>INTANGIBLE ASSETS</i>	22
HKAS 40 <i>INVESTMENT PROPERTY</i>	23
HKAS 41 <i>AGRICULTURE</i>	23
HK(IFRIC)-INT 5 <i>RIGHTS TO INTERESTS ARISING FROM DECOMMISSIONING, RESTORATION AND ENVIRONMENTAL REHABILITATION FUNDS</i>	24
HK(IFRIC)-INT 12 <i>SERVICE CONCESSION ARRANGEMENTS</i>	24

HK(IFRIC)-INT 14 <i>HKAS 19—THE LIMIT ON A DEFINED BENEFIT ASSET, MINIMUM FUNDING REQUIREMENTS AND THEIR INTERACTION</i>	24
HK(IFRIC)-INT 17 <i>DISTRIBUTIONS OF NON-CASH ASSETS TO OWNERS</i>	25
HK(IFRIC)-INT 19 <i>EXTINGUISHING FINANCIAL LIABILITIES WITH EQUITY INSTRUMENTS</i>	25
HK(IFRIC)-INT 20 <i>STRIPPING COSTS IN THE PRODUCTION PHASE OF A SURFACE MINE</i>	26
HK(IFRIC)-INT 22 <i>FOREIGN CURRENCY TRANSACTIONS AND ADVANCE CONSIDERATION</i>	27
HK(SIC)-INT 29 <i>SERVICE CONCESSION ARRANGEMENTS: DISCLOSURES</i>	27
HK(SIC)-INT 32 <i>INTANGIBLE ASSETS—WEB SITE COSTS</i>	27

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 1 *First-time Adoption of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards*

The footnote to the second occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph BC7 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to '*Framework*, paragraph 14' in paragraph BC93(b) is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~superseded by Chapter 1 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 2 *Share-based Payment*

The footnote to paragraph BC33(d) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to 'paragraph 70,' in paragraph BC45 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraph 4.25 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to the first sentence in paragraph BC47 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraphs 4.4 and 4.5 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '(paragraphs 49 and 67)' in paragraph BC62 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraphs 4.4 and 4.22 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '(paragraph 82)' in paragraph BC287 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.37 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

Paragraphs BC383–BC384 and their related heading are added.

Amended quotation from the *Conceptual Framework*

BC383 In Appendix A, the footnote to the definition of an equity instrument quoted the definition of a liability from the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* issued in 2010. Following the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards* amended the footnote to quote the revised definition of a liability from the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

BC384 The 2018 *Conceptual Framework* did not address classification of financial instruments with characteristics of both liabilities and equity. In addition, *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards* did not amend the guidance on classification of financial instruments in IFRS 2. Therefore the Board does not expect the amendment to the footnote in IFRS 2 to have a significant effect on the application of this Standard.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 3 *Business Combinations*

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC37 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

* ~~In this Basis for Conclusions references~~References to the *Framework* ~~in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001, and in effect when the Standard was developed.~~~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to the second sentence in paragraph BC37 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~superseded by Chapter 1 of the *Conceptual Framework*.~~

Paragraphs BC114A–BC114B are added.

BC114A IFRS 3 contains references to the definitions of an asset and a liability in the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (Framework)*. It requires those definitions to be used when deciding whether to recognise assets and liabilities as part of a business combination. In developing the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), the IASB considered whether it should replace those references with references to the revised definitions in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. In some cases, applying the revised definitions could change which assets and liabilities qualify for recognition in a business combination. In some such cases, the post-acquisition accounting required by other IFRS Standards could then lead to immediate derecognition of assets or liabilities recognised in a business combination, resulting in so-called *Day 2 gains or losses* that do not depict an economic gain or loss.

BC114B Although the IASB intended to replace all references to the *Framework* with references to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the IASB did not intend to make significant changes to the requirements of IFRS Standards containing those references. Consequently, the IASB decided to retain the reference to the *Framework* in paragraph 11 of IFRS 3 until it completes an analysis of the possible consequences of referring in that paragraph to the revised definitions of an asset and a liability. Once that analysis is complete, the IASB intends to amend IFRS 3 to replace the reference to the *Framework* in a way that avoids unintended consequences, such as *Day 2 gains or losses*.

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC153 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.41 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC322 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.8 of the *Conceptual Framework*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 4 *Insurance Contracts*

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC8 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to '*Framework*,' in paragraph DO3 of the Dissent of Mary E Barth, Robert P Garnett, Gilbert Gélard, James J Leisenring and John T Smith is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Dissent are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 5 *Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations*

The footnote to the first occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph BC62 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. Paragraphs 12 and 15 were superseded by Chapter 1 of the *Conceptual Framework*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 6 *Exploration for and Evaluation of Mineral Resources*

The footnote to 'Framework's' in paragraph BC7 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Paragraph BC67 and its related heading are added.

Amended reference to the *Conceptual Framework*

BC67 Following the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), the Board issued *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards*. In IFRS 6, that document replaced a reference in paragraph 10 to the *Framework* with a reference to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The Board does not expect that replacement to have a significant effect on the application of the Standard for the following reasons:

- (a) The Board does not expect the application of the revised definition of an asset, together with the revised recognition criteria, to lead to significant changes in practice for entities that applied the *Framework* when developing their accounting policies for recognition of assets arising from development of mineral resources. Although the Board replaced the probability and reliability recognition criteria with recognition criteria based on the qualitative characteristics of useful financial information, the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* specifies low probability of an inflow or outflow of economic benefits and measurement uncertainty as factors to be considered in decisions about recognition.
- (b) Entities that apply IAS 38 to develop their accounting policies for recognition of assets arising from development of mineral resources will not be affected by the amendment of the reference to the *Framework* in IFRS 6.

The footnote to 'Framework,' in paragraph DO2 of the Dissent of Robert P Garnett, James J Leisenring, Warren J McGregor and John T Smith is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 8 Operating Segments

The footnote to 'Framework' in paragraph DO2 of the Dissent of Stephen Cooper from the amendment issued in April 2009 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was amended. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 9 Financial Instruments

The footnote to 'Framework,' in paragraph BCZ3.16 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the ~~Framework~~ Framework in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB in 2001 and in effect when parts of the Standard were developed and revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

A footnote is added to 'Conceptual Framework,' in paragraph BC5.86.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when parts of the Standard were developed and amended.

A footnote is added to the last sentence in paragraph BC7.40.

* In 2018 the IASB issued a revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

The footnote to 'Framework' in paragraph DO11 of the Dissent of James J Leisenring from IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments* (issued 2009) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

* The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 10 Consolidated Financial Statements

Paragraph BCZ157 is amended and a footnote is added to the second sentence in paragraph BCZ157. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

BCZ157 ... The Board concluded that a minority (non-controlling) interest is not a liability because it did not meet the definition of a liability in the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* ~~(replaced in 2010 by the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*).~~*

* References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised and amended.

Paragraph BCZ158 is amended. Deleted text is struck through.

BCZ158 Paragraph 49(b) of the *Framework* ~~(now paragraph 4.4(b) of the *Conceptual Framework*)~~ stated that a liability is a present obligation of the entity arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow from the entity of resources embodying economic benefits. Paragraph 60 of the *Framework* ~~(now paragraph 4.15 of the *Conceptual Framework*)~~ explained that an essential characteristic of a liability is that the entity has a present obligation and that an obligation is a duty or responsibility to act or perform in a particular way. ...

Paragraph BCZ159 is amended. Deleted text is struck through.

BCZ159 ... Paragraph 49(c) of the *Framework* (now paragraph 4.4(c) of the *Conceptual Framework*) stated that equity is the residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities.

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*,' in paragraph DO1 of the Dissent of Tatsumi Yamada from IAS 27 (as revised in 2003) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

* The reference is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, was adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

An amendment is made to the footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*,' in paragraph DO6 of the Dissent of Philippe Danjou, Jan Engström, Robert P Garnett, Gilbert Gélard and Tatsumi Yamada from the amendments to IAS 27 issued in January 2008 on the accounting for non-controlling interests and the loss of control of a subsidiary. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

* The reference is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, was adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was amended. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 12 *Disclosure of Interests in Other Entities*

Paragraph BC45 is amended and a footnote is added to '(*Conceptual Framework*)' in this paragraph. New text is underlined.

BC45 The Board decided to require the information for joint arrangements and associates that are material to the reporting entity rather than for significant joint arrangements and associates. The *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (*Conceptual Framework*)* defines materiality whereas the term 'significant' is undefined and can be interpreted differently. ...

* References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was developed.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 14 *Regulatory Deferral Accounts*

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*' in paragraph BC5 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference is to the IASB's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretations Committee discussed this matter. In September 2010, the IASB replaced the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. The definitions of assets and liabilities and the criteria for recognising them in the statement of financial position were unchanged.

A footnote is added to '(the '*Conceptual Framework*')' in the second sentence in paragraph BC10.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was developed.

The footnote to the fourth sentence in paragraph BC10 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~The IASB published, in July 2013, the Discussion Paper *A Review of the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. The deadline for comments was 14 January 2014.~~

A footnote is added to the first sentence in paragraph DO6 of the Dissent of Messrs Edelmann, Gomes and Zhang.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Dissent are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was developed.

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 15 Revenue from Contracts with Customers

A footnote is added to '*Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*' in paragraph BC29.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was developed.

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 16 Leases

A footnote is added to '*(Conceptual Framework)*' in paragraph BC22.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was developed.

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKFRS 17 Insurance Contracts

A footnote is added to '*Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*' in paragraph BC79.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework)* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was developed.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 1 Presentation of Financial Statements

The footnote to the second occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph BC16 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised and amended. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

<p>Paragraphs BC105G–BC105J and their related heading are added.</p>
--

Amended references to the *Conceptual Framework*

BC105G Following the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), the Board issued *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards*. In IAS 1, that document replaced references in paragraphs 15, 19–20, 23–24, 28 and 89 to the *Framework* with references to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.

BC105H The Board does not expect the replacement of the references to the *Framework* to have a significant effect on the application of the Standard for the following reasons:

- (a) In paragraph 15, replacing the reference to the *Framework* should not change the assessment of whether the financial statements present fairly the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity. Paragraph 15 explains that the application of IFRS Standards, with additional disclosure when necessary, is presumed to result in financial statements that achieve fair presentation. Revisions of the *Conceptual Framework* will not automatically lead to changes in IFRS Standards. Hence, entities are expected to continue applying IFRS Standards in preparing their financial statements even in cases in which the requirements of a particular Standard depart from aspects of the *Conceptual Framework*.
- (b) In paragraphs 19–20 and 23–24, replacing the reference to the *Framework* means referring to the revised description of the objective of financial statements in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* instead of the description provided by the *Framework*. The objective did not change substantively—it is an adapted and updated version of the objective of financial statements from the *Framework* and paragraph 9 of IAS 1. Hence, applying the revised objective is not expected to lead to changes in the application of the requirements in paragraphs 19–20 and 23–24.
- (c) In paragraph 28, replacing the reference to the *Framework* in the discussion of the accrual basis of accounting is not expected to result in any changes because no changes were made to the discussion of the accrual basis of accounting in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.
- (d) In paragraph 89, replacing the reference to the *Framework* means referring to the revised definitions of income and expenses in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The Board concluded that this is unlikely to lead to changes in applying the requirements of IAS 1 because the definitions of income and expenses in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* were updated only to align them with the revised definitions of an asset and a liability. Moreover, the main purpose of paragraph 89 is to indicate that particular items of income or expenses can be recognised outside profit or loss only if required by other IFRS Standards.

BC105I IAS 1 referred to the *Framework* in paragraph 7 and quoted the description of users of financial statements from the *Framework*. To retain the requirements of this paragraph, the Board decided to embed that description in the Standard itself instead of updating the reference and the related quotation.

BC105J In developing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* the Board retained the term ‘faithful representation’ as a label for the qualitative characteristic previously called ‘reliability’ (see paragraphs BC2.22–BC2.31 of the Basis for Conclusions on the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*). In order to avoid possible unintended consequences, the Board decided against replacing the term ‘reliability’ with the term ‘faithful representation’ in the Standards at this time.

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph DO4 of the Dissent of Mary E Barth, Anthony T Cope, Robert P Garnett and James J Leisenring from IAS 1 (as revised in September 2007) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

A footnote is added to '*Conceptual Framework*' in paragraph DO1 of the Dissent of Paul Pacter from *Presentation of Items of Other Comprehensive Income (Amendments to IAS 1)*.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Dissent are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was amended.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 8 Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors

Paragraph BC7(b) and the footnote to '*Framework*,' in this paragraph are amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

BC7 ...

- (b) ... This information possesses a qualitative characteristic identified in the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (Framework)*,* and provides the most useful information for trend analysis of income and expenses. ...

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, ~~was~~ adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to paragraph BC17(b) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~ In 2018 the Board issued a revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (Conceptual Framework)*. The Board also issued *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards*. That document replaced the reference to the *Framework* in paragraph 11(b) of IAS 8 with a reference to the *Conceptual Framework*, except in the case of some regulatory account balances, as explained in paragraphs 54G of IAS 8 and BC38–BC40.

Paragraphs BC34–BC41 and their related heading are added.

Amended references to the *Conceptual Framework*

- BC34 Following the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), the Board issued *Amendments to References to Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards*. In IAS 8, that document amended paragraphs 6 and 11(b).
- BC35 Paragraph 6 of IAS 8 quoted the description of users of financial statements from the *Framework*. To retain the requirements of this paragraph, the Board decided to embed that description of users in the Standard itself instead of updating the reference and the related quotation.
- BC36 *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards* replaced the reference in paragraph 11(b) to the *Framework* with a reference to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. Following this replacement, if management developed accounting policies in accordance with paragraph 11(b), management will need to review whether those policies are still consistent with the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*.
- BC37 The Board analysed the effects on preparers of financial statements of replacing the reference to the *Framework* in paragraph 11(b) of IAS 8 and discussed the results of the analysis at the November 2016 Board meeting (see November 2016 AP10G *Effects of the proposed changes to the Conceptual Framework on preparers*). The analysis suggested that the scope of any changes to preparers' accounting policies is likely to be limited because:
- (a) most preparers of financial statements do not develop accounting policies by reference to the *Framework* because most transactions are:
 - (i) covered by IFRS Standards;
 - (ii) accounted for by applying accounting policies developed using other sources referred to in paragraphs 11–12 of IAS 8; or
 - (iii) exempt from the requirement to apply paragraph 11 of IAS 8; for example, IFRS 6 *Exploration for and Evaluation of Mineral Resources* exempts entities from applying paragraph 11 of IAS 8 to the recognition and measurement of exploration and evaluation assets; and
 - (b) in most of the few remaining areas, application of the revised concepts in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* would be expected to result in similar accounting outcomes to application of the concepts in the *Framework*.

Application by rate-regulated entities

- BC38 While assessing possible effects of updating the reference to the *Framework* in IAS 8, the Board identified a potential disadvantage for entities that conduct rate-regulated activities and develop their accounting policies for regulatory account balances by reference to the *Framework* rather than by applying IFRS 14 *Regulatory Deferral Accounts*. If the reference to the *Framework* had been updated, such entities might have needed to revise those accounting policies twice within a short period of time—first, when the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* comes into effect; and, later, when a new IFRS Standard on rate-regulated activities is issued. In the absence of specific guidance, there might have been uncertainty about what would be acceptable if the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* was applied. Establishing what would be acceptable might have been costly and the outcome might have been diversity in practice and a loss of trend information for users.

- BC39 To prevent unhelpful and unnecessary disruption for users of the financial statements of entities that conduct rate-regulated activities and for the entities themselves, the Board provided a temporary exception: paragraph 54G prohibits entities from applying the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* to accounting policies relating to regulatory account balances. Instead, entities are required to continue to apply the *Framework* when developing or revising those accounting policies. Once the Board issues a new IFRS Standard on rate-regulated activities, that prohibition is likely to become unnecessary.
- BC40 The Board based the definition of ‘a regulatory account balance’ on the definition of ‘a regulatory deferral account balance’ in IFRS 14, with one difference: the definition of a regulatory account balance does not mention qualifying for deferral. The reference to deferral in IFRS 14 reflects the fact that IFRS 14 permits continued recognition of some regulatory deferral account balances that an entity previously recognised as assets or liabilities immediately before it adopted IFRS Standards for the first time. In contrast, paragraph 54G of IAS 8 applies only when an entity is not applying IFRS 14 but is instead developing an accounting policy after considering paragraph 11 of IAS 8. Paragraph 54G applies regardless of whether that accounting policy results in recognition of any assets or liabilities, and regardless of whether such recognition could be viewed as deferral.

Transition relief

- BC41 The Board concluded that the retrospective application of revised accounting policies in accordance with IAS 8 would provide the most useful information to users of financial statements. However, in order to keep disruption for users and preparers of financial statements to a minimum, the Board decided not to require retrospective application of any amendment in *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards* if doing so would either be impracticable or involve undue cost or effort.

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 12 *Income Taxes*

The footnote to ‘*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*’ in paragraph BC6 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference is to the IASC’s *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, was adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the SIC discussed this matter. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment*

The footnote to the second sentence in paragraph BC5 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

A footnote is added to 'Conceptual Framework' in paragraph BC67.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was amended.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 19 *Employee Benefits*

Paragraph BC53 and the footnote to the first sentence in paragraph BC53 are amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- BC53 Paragraph 63 of IAS 19 is based on the definition of, and recognition criteria for, a liability in the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (Framework)*.* ...

- * ~~In September 2010 the Board replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~ References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised.

A footnote is added to 'Conceptual Framework' in paragraph BC90.

- * The reference to the *Conceptual Framework* is to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was amended.

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 21 *The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates*

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*' in paragraph BC25 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. The reference is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised.~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 28 *Investments in Associates and Joint Ventures*

A footnote is added to the last sentence in paragraph BC35.

- * The reference is to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Standard was amended.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 32 *Financial Instruments: Presentation*

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC21(b) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised and amended. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to the second occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph BC27 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraph 4.22 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph DO2 of the Dissent of James J Leisenring from the issue of IAS 32 in December 2003 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

An amendment is made to the footnote to the first sentence in paragraph DO2 of the Dissent of Mary E Barth and Robert P Garnett from the issue of *Puttable Financial Instruments and Obligations Arising on Liquidation* (Amendments to IAS 32 and IAS 1) in February 2008. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Dissent are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was amended. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*

Paragraphs BC11–BC12 and their related heading are added.

Amended references to the *Conceptual Framework*

- BC11 Following the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), the Board issued *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards*. In IAS 34, that document replaced references in paragraphs 31 and 33 to the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* adopted by the Board in 2001 (*Framework*) with references to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, and updated a related quotation. The Board does not expect that replacement to have a significant effect on the application of the Standard because the Board made no significant changes to the aspects of recognition that those paragraphs refer to—that is, the importance of definitions for recognition.
- BC12 *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards* also replaced the term 'balance sheet' with the term 'statement of financial position' in paragraphs 31 and 33 of IAS 34. The term 'balance sheet' had been replaced in IFRS Standards following the revision of IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements* in 2007. However, paragraphs 31 and 33 of IAS 34 had not been amended then because the term was part of direct quotations from the *Framework*. Upon issuing the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*, the Board replaced the term 'balance sheet' in those paragraphs so that the terminology used in the 2018 *Conceptual Framework* and in IFRS Standards is consistent.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 36 *Impairment of Assets*

The footnote to 'Framework' in paragraph BCZ184(a) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~The reference~~ References to the Framework in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed and revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

The footnote to the first occurrence of 'Framework' in paragraph BC199 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~The references to the Framework are to IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB in 2001. In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 38 *Intangible Assets*

The footnote to the first occurrence of 'Framework' in paragraph BC18 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the Framework in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed and revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting.~~

The footnote to 'Framework,' in paragraph BCZ43 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * now paragraph 4.38 of the Conceptual Framework

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph DO2 of the Dissent of Geoffrey Whittington from IAS 38 issued in March 2004 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~The references~~References to the *Framework* in this Dissent are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was revised. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 40 *Investment Property*

The footnote to '*Framework*,' in paragraph B63(f) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*. Paragraphs 92 and 93 are now paragraphs 4.47 and 4.48 of the *Conceptual Framework*.~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HKAS 41 *Agriculture*

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*' in paragraph B17(c) is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, which was adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Standard was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 5 *Rights to Interests arising from Decommissioning, Restoration and Environmental Rehabilitation Funds*

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC20 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 12 *Service Concession Arrangements*

The footnote to '*Framework*.' in paragraph BC20 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC67 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraph 4.46 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 14 HKAS 19—*The Limit on a Defined Benefit Asset, Minimum Funding Requirements and their Interaction*

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC8 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * The reference to the *Framework* is to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 17 *Distributions of Non-cash Assets to Owners*

The footnote to '*Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*,' in paragraph BC31 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraph 4.41 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~. References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to the first occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph BC51 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraph 4.47 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC52 is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

- * ~~now paragraph 4.10 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 19 *Extinguishing Financial Liabilities with Equity Instruments*

The footnote to '*Framework*' in paragraph BC16 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

- * References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASC's Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements, adopted by the IASB Board in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed. ~~In September 2010 the IASB replaced the Framework with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.~~

The footnote to '(paragraph 70(a))' in paragraph BC24(a) is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.25(a) of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '(paragraph 75)' in paragraph BC24(b) is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.30 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '(paragraph 77)' in paragraph BC24(c) is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.32 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

The footnote to '(paragraph 76 of the *Framework*)' in paragraph BC32(a) is deleted. Deleted text is struck through.

* ~~now paragraph 4.31 of the *Conceptual Framework*~~

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 20 *Stripping Costs in the Production Phase of a Surface Mine*

A footnote is added to the first sentence in paragraph BC7.

* The reference is to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.

Amendment to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(IFRIC)-Int 22 *Foreign Currency Transactions and Advance Consideration*

A footnote is added to '(the *Conceptual Framework*)' in paragraph BC17.

- * References to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(SIC)-Int 29 *Service Concession Arrangements: Disclosures*

The existing footnote to the first occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph 8 is deleted.

- * superseded by Chapter 1 of the *Conceptual Framework*. References to the *Framework* are to IASB's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001. In September 2010 the IASB replaced the *Framework* with the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

A new footnote is added to the first occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph 8.

- † References to the *Framework* in this Basis for Conclusions are to the IASB's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, adopted by the IASB in 2001 and in effect when the Interpretation was developed.

The footnote marker to the second occurrence of '*Framework*' in paragraph 8 is deleted.

Amendments to the Basis for Conclusions on HK(SIC)-Int 32 *Intangible Assets—Web Site Costs*

Paragraph 19 and its related heading are added.

Amended reference to the *Conceptual Framework*

- 19 Following the issue of the revised *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in 2018 (2018 *Conceptual Framework*), the Board issued *Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in IFRS Standards*. In SIC-32, that document replaced a reference in paragraph 5 to the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* adopted by the Board in 2001 (*Framework*) with a reference to the 2018 *Conceptual Framework*. The Board does not expect that replacement to have a significant effect on the application of the Interpretation. Paragraph 5 describes the accounting for expenditure excluded from the scope of the Interpretation. That paragraph also states that this type of expenditure—expenditure on an Internet service provider hosting the entity’s web site—is recognised as an expense, so the amendment will not affect the accounting treatment.

Amendments to References to the Conceptual Framework in HKFRS Standards (Illustrative Examples and Implementation Guidance)



Hong Kong Institute of
Certified Public Accountants
香港會計師公會

COPYRIGHT

© Copyright 2018 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Framework contains the IFRS Foundation copyright material. Reproduction within Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Hong Kong should be addressed to the Director, Finance and Operations, Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

All rights in this material outside of Hong Kong are reserved by IFRS Foundation. Reproduction of Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards outside of Hong Kong in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only. Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce for commercial purposes outside Hong Kong should be addressed to the IFRS Foundation at www.ifrs.org.

Further details of the IFRS Foundation copyright notice is available at <http://app1.hkicpa.org.hk/ebook/copyright-notice.pdf>

CONTENTS

	<i>from page</i>
AMENDMENTS TO:	
GUIDANCE ON IMPLEMENTING HKFRS 4 <i>INSURANCE CONTRACTS</i>	4
ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES ON HKAS 34 <i>INTERIM FINANCIAL REPORTING</i>	4

Amendments to Guidance on implementing HKFRS 4 *Insurance Contracts*

As a consequence of amending paragraph 7 of IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph IG16 is amended. New text is underlined and deleted text is struck through.

Materiality

...

IG16 IAS 1 also explains the following:

Assessing whether an omission or misstatement could influence economic decisions of users, and so be material, requires consideration of the characteristics of those users. ~~The *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* states in paragraph 25 that 'users~~Users are assumed to have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities and accounting and a willingness to study the information with reasonable diligence.' Therefore, the assessment needs to take into account how users with such attributes could reasonably be expected to be influenced in making economic decisions.

Amendment to Illustrative Examples on HKAS 34 *Interim Financial Reporting*

A footnote is added to '*Conceptual Framework*' in paragraph B23.

* The reference to the *Conceptual Framework* is to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, issued in 2010.